



# marantz®

AV Pre Tuner  
**AV8802A**

You can print more than one page of a PDF onto a single sheet of paper.

Owner's Manual



<b>Update</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Upgrade</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>10</b>
Inserting the batteries	11
Operating range of the remote control unit	11
<b>Features</b>	<b>12</b>
High quality sound	12
High performance	15
Easy operation	18
<b>Part names and functions</b>	<b>19</b>
Front panel	19
Display	24
Rear panel	28
Remote control unit	31

## Connections

<b>Connecting a power amp</b>	<b>36</b>
Speaker installation	36
Connecting a power amp	46
Speaker configuration and "Amp Assign" settings	50
<b>Connecting a TV</b>	<b>63</b>
Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)	64
Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)	65
Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector	66

<b>Connecting a playback device</b>	<b>67</b>
Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)	69
Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player	70
Connecting a video camcorder or game console	71
Connecting a turntable	72
Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector	73
<b>Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port</b>	<b>74</b>
<b>Connecting an HD Radio receiver</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>Connecting to a home network (LAN)</b>	<b>79</b>
Wired LAN	79
Wireless LAN	80
<b>Connecting an external control device</b>	<b>81</b>
REMOTE CONTROL jacks	81
DC OUT jacks	83
<b>Connecting the power cord</b>	<b>84</b>



# Playback

<b>Basic operation</b>	<b>86</b>
Turning the power on	86
Selecting the input source	86
Adjusting the volume	87
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)	87
Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player	87
<b>Playing an iPod</b>	<b>88</b>
Listening to music on an iPod	89
iPod Browse Mode settings	90
Setting the USB port to use (USB Select)	91
Performing repeat playback	92
Performing random playback	92
<b>Playing a USB memory device</b>	<b>93</b>
Playing files stored on USB memory devices	94
<b>Listening to music on a Bluetooth device</b>	<b>96</b>
Pairing with a Bluetooth device	97
Playing a Bluetooth device	98
Pairing with the Pairing Mode	100

## Listening to an HD Radio™ stations

Listening to an HD Radio broadcast	103
Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)	105
Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)	105
Selecting an audio program	106
Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)	106
Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)	107
Listening to preset stations	107
Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)	108
Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)	109
Cancelling Preset Skip	110
Checking the HD Radio reception information	111

## Listening to Internet Radio

Listening to Internet Radio	113
Playing the last played Internet Radio station	114
Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites	115

## Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

Applying media sharing settings	117
Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS	118



<b>Viewing photographs on the Flickr site</b>	<b>120</b>	<b>Convenience functions</b>	<b>138</b>
Viewing photographs shared by particular users	121	Performing repeat playback	139
Viewing all photographs on Flickr	123	Performing random playback	139
<b>Listening to Pandora®</b>	<b>124</b>	Registering to Favorites	140
Listening to Pandora®	125	Playing back content added to the “Save to Favorites”	140
Creating a new station	127	Deleting content added to favorites	141
Listening to an existing station	128	Searching content with keywords (Text Search)	141
Listening to created radio stations at random	128	Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)	142
Giving feedback and managing stations	129	Setting the Slideshow Interval	143
Sign Out	130	Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)	143
<b>Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio</b>	<b>131</b>	Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)	144
Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio	132	Adjusting the tone (Tone)	145
Sign Out	133	Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)	146
<b>AirPlay function</b>	<b>134</b>	Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)	147
Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad	135	Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)	148
Playing iTunes music with this unit	135		
Selecting multiple speakers (devices)	136		
Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit	136		
<b>Spotify Connect function</b>	<b>137</b>		
Playing Spotify music with this unit	137		



<b>Selecting a sound mode</b>	<b>149</b>
Selecting a sound mode	150
Direct playback	151
Pure Direct playback	151
Auto surround playback	152
<b>HDMI control function</b>	<b>166</b>
Setting procedure	166
<b>Sleep timer function</b>	<b>167</b>
Using the sleep timer	168
<b>Smart select function</b>	<b>169</b>
Calling up the settings	170
Changing the settings	171
<b>Web control function</b>	<b>172</b>
Controlling the unit from a web control	172
<b>Panel lock function</b>	<b>174</b>
Disabling all key button operations	174
Disabling all button operations except VOLUME	174
Canceling the Panel lock function	175
<b>Remote lock function</b>	<b>176</b>
Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit	176
Enabling the remote sensor function	176
<b>Switches light illumination on/off</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room)</b>	<b>178</b>
Connecting ZONE	178
Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3	181

## Settings

<b>Menu map</b>	<b>183</b>
Menu operations	186
<b>Inputting characters</b>	<b>187</b>
Using the keyboard screen	188
<b>Audio</b>	<b>189</b>
Subwoofer Level Adjust	189
Bass Sync	189
Surround Parameter	190
M-DAX	196
Audio Delay	197
Volume	197
Audyssey	198
Graphic EQ	202
<b>Video</b>	<b>204</b>
Picture Adjust	204
HDMI Setup	206
Output Settings	211
Analog Video Out	215
On Screen Display	216
TV Format	217



<b>Inputs</b>	<b>218</b>	<b>Network</b>	<b>257</b>
Input Assign	218	Information	257
Source Rename	220	Connection	257
Hide Sources	220	Wi-Fi Setup	258
Source Level	220	Settings	260
Input Select	221	IP Control	261
<b>Speakers</b>	<b>222</b>	Friendly Name	262
<b>Audyssey® Setup</b>	<b>222</b>	Diagnostics	262
Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)	224	Maintenance Mode	263
Error messages	230	<b>General</b>	<b>264</b>
Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings	232	Language	264
<b>Manual Setup</b>	<b>233</b>	ZONE2 Setup / ZONE3 Setup	264
Amp Assign	233	Zone Rename	266
Speaker Config.	245	Smart Select Names	266
Distances	250	Trigger Out 1 / Trigger Out 2	267
Levels	251	Auto Standby	267
Crossovers	252	Front Display	268
Bass	253	Information	268
Front Speaker	254	Usage Data	270
2ch Playback	254	Firmware	271
		Setup Lock	273



<b>Operating external devices with the remote control unit</b>	<b>274</b>
Registering preset codes	275
Operating devices	278
Checking registered preset codes	281
Initializing registered preset codes	281
<b>Operating learning function</b>	<b>282</b>
Remembering remote control codes from other devices	283
Delete saved remote control codes	284
<b>Setting the back light</b>	<b>285</b>
Disabling the backlight	285
Turning the backlight on	285
<b>Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit</b>	<b>286</b>

## Tips

<b>Tips</b>	<b>288</b>
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>290</b>
<b>Resetting factory settings</b>	<b>308</b>

## Appendix

<b>About HDMI</b>	<b>309</b>
<b>Video conversion function</b>	<b>312</b>
<b>Playing back a USB memory devices</b>	<b>314</b>
<b>Playing back a Bluetooth device</b>	<b>315</b>
<b>Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS</b>	<b>316</b>
<b>Playing back Internet Radio</b>	<b>317</b>
<b>Personal memory plus function</b>	<b>317</b>
<b>Last function memory</b>	<b>317</b>
<b>Sound modes and channel output</b>	<b>318</b>
<b>Sound modes and surround parameters</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes</b>	<b>326</b>
<b>Explanation of terms</b>	<b>330</b>
<b>Trademark information</b>	<b>343</b>
<b>Specifications</b>	<b>346</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>351</b>
<b>List of preset codes</b>	<b>354</b>
<b>License</b>	<b>365</b>



# Update

## Update (DTS:X)

DTS:X provides an immersive audio experience in a home theater by optimizing playback using object-based audio, regardless of the speaker configuration. You can also enjoy an immersive audio experience for older content by using the DTS Neural:X upmixing feature.

DTS Neo:X is no longer supported once you update to DTS:X.

## DTS:X

### Features

High quality sound	13
--------------------	----

### Connecting speakers

Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings	51
-------------------------------------------------	----

### Selecting a sound mode

Description of sound mode types DTS sound mode	155
------------------------------------------------	-----

Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal	164
-------------------------------------------------------	-----

### Audio

Dialog Control	192
----------------	-----

DTS Neural:X	192
--------------	-----

### General

Firmware	269
----------	-----

### Appendix

Sound modes and channel output	319
--------------------------------	-----

Sound mode and surround parameters	323
------------------------------------	-----

Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes	328
-------------------------------------------------------	-----

Explanation of terms	335
----------------------	-----

Trademark information	344
-----------------------	-----



# Upgrade

## Upgrade (Euro-3D)

The text marked with this symbol that will enable after the upgrade of the Euro-3D.

You can experience the best performance of Euro-3D if you install Front Height and Surround Height in addition to standard 5.1-channel. The “Setup Assistant” will lead you to this setting.

You can use Rear Height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup instead of Surround Height speakers for Euro-3D playback.

The AVP also can play Euro-3D using standard 5.1-channel and Front Height speakers. If you install any height speakers instead of Surround Height speakers and Rear Height speakers, you can set the speaker configuration in setup menu.

## Auro-3D

### Features

High quality sound	14
--------------------	----

### Connecting speakers

Speaker installation	38, 41
Layout including height speakers and top speakers	45
Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings	51
Auro-3D 9.1/10.1-channel system	62

### Selecting a sound mode

Description of sound mode types Euro-3D sound mode	156
Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal	164

### Audio

Auro-Matic 3D Preset	193
----------------------	-----

Auro-Matic 3D Strength	193
------------------------	-----

### Inputs

Decode Mode	221
-------------	-----

### Manual Setup

Amp Assign	234, 234, 236, 244
------------	--------------------

Speaker Config.	249
-----------------	-----

### Appendix

Sound modes and channel output	320
--------------------------------	-----

Sound mode and surround parameters	321
------------------------------------	-----

Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes	328
-------------------------------------------------------	-----

Explanation of terms	331
----------------------	-----

Trademark information	345
-----------------------	-----



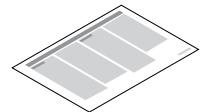
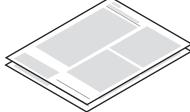
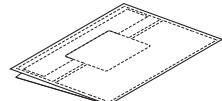
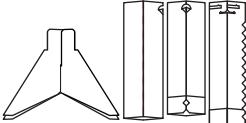
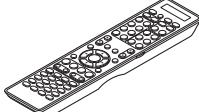
Thank you for purchasing this Marantz product.

To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product.

After reading this manual, be sure to keep it for future reference.

## Accessories

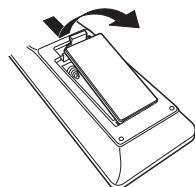
Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

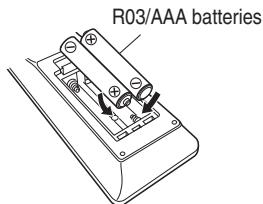


## Inserting the batteries

- 1 Remove the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



- 2 Insert two batteries correctly into the battery compartment as indicated.



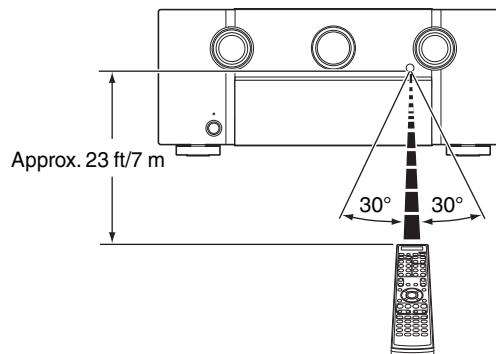
- 3 Put the rear cover back on.

### NOTE

- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.

## Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.



# Features

## High quality sound

- **Dolby Atmos** (☞ p. 332)

This unit is equipped with a decoder that supports Dolby Atmos, a completely new audio format. The placement or movement of sound is accurately reproduced by the addition of overhead speakers, enabling you to experience an incredibly natural and realistic surround sound field.

- **Current feedback amplifier**

This unit uses a high-speed current feedback amplifier circuit for its preamplifier so that signals from a Blu-ray Disc player and other equipment that support high-definition audio formats can be amplified with high fidelity. The high-speed current feedback amplifier also reproduces a natural sound space.

- **Audyssey DSX®** (☞ p. 201)

This unit is equipped with Audyssey DSX® processor. By connecting front height speakers to this unit and playing back with Audyssey DSX® processing you can experience a more vertically expansive front soundstage. By connecting two front wide speakers, you can experience a wider and more expanded front soundstage.

- **Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment)** (☞ p. 200)

Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

- **Discrete subwoofers and Audyssey Sub EQ HT™** (☞ p. 223)

The unit has two subwoofer output capability and can adjust the level and delay for each subwoofer individually.

Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together for improved deep bass response and detail.

- **DTS Neo:X** (☞ p. 335)

This technology enables the playback of 2-channel source audio or 7.1/5.1 multi-channel source audio through a maximum 11.1-channel speakers, achieving an even broader soundstage.



## Update (DTS:X)

- **DTS:X**

This unit supports DTS:X via firmware update. DTS:X brings the home theater experience to new heights with its immersive object based audio technology which removes the bounds of channels.

The flexibility of objects allows for sound to be scaled large or small and moved around the room with greater accuracy than ever before leading to a richer immersive audio experience.



DTS Neo:X is unavailable after updating to DTS:X

## Upgrade (Auro-3D)

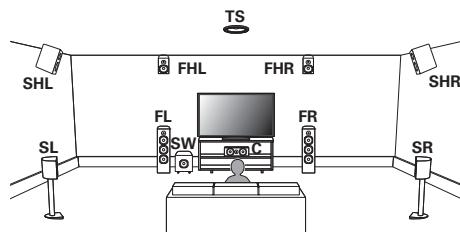
- **Auro-3D**

This unit is equipped with an Auro-3D decoder.

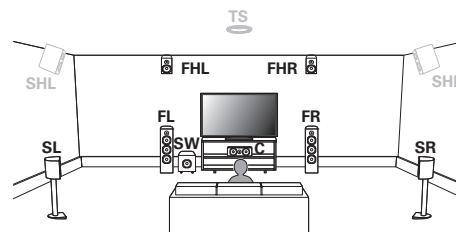
With Auro-3D, Front Height (FHL+FHR), Surround Height (SHL+SHR) and Top Surround (TS/optional) are added to a conventional 5.1-channel system to achieve a natural and realistic sound field that is three-dimensional and fully immersive.

After performing the Auro-3D upgrade you will be able to fully enjoy Auro-3D playback if you properly place the speakers for Auro-3D.

### ■Auro-3D Playback



### ■Dolby Atmos Playback



Auro-3D does not support a Dolby Atmos configuration using Top Front, Top Middle, Top Rear, Rear Height, or any Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.

If you are using these speakers and want to take advantage of the Auro-3D Upgrade, you need to relocate them to Front Height and Surround Height speaker locations as shown above.

But it is possible to support both an Auro-3D and Dolby Atmos by adding front height and rear height speakers\* to a 5.1 configuration.

\* For an optimum Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are strongly recommended.

## High performance

- 4K 60Hz input/output supported



When 4K Ultra HD (High Definition) is used, an input/output speed of 60 frames per second (60p) is achieved for video signals. When connected to 4K Ultra HD and 60p video signal input compatible TV, you can enjoy the sense of realism only available from high-definition images, even when viewing fast-moving video.

This unit also supports image processing for 4K 60p, 4:4:4 and 24-bit videos. By processing the video at the original resolution, this unit lets you enjoy flawless, high-definition picture quality.

- Digital video processor upscales analog video signals (SD resolution) to HD (720p/1080p) and 4K ( p. 213)



This unit is equipped with a 4K video upscaling function that allows analog video or SD (Standard Definition) video to be output via HDMI at 4K (3840 × 2160 pixels) resolution. This function enables the device to be connected to a TV using a single HDMI cable, and produces high definition images for any video source.

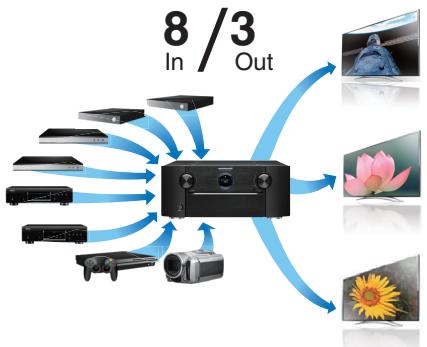
- **HDCP 2.2**

This unit is compatible with HDCP 2.2, copyright protection standard.

- **Equipped with HDMI ZONE2 output ( p. 178)**

The ZONE2 multi-room output includes an HDMI output that lets you enjoy a different A/V source in that room, with another program playing in the main room.

- HDMI connections enable connection to various digital AV devices (8 inputs, 3 output)



For connection to a broad range of digital sources, this unit features 8 HDMI inputs, including 1 on the front panel that lets you quickly and conveniently connect a camcorder, game console or other HDMI-equipped device. There are dual HDMI outputs for the main room, and a third HDMI output for another room.

- The device is equipped with a AirPlay® function in addition to network functions such as Internet radio etc. (☞ p. 134)



You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet Radio, playing audio files stored on your PC, and displaying photographs stored on your PC on our television.

This unit also supports Apple AirPlay which lets you stream your music library from an iPhone®, iPad®, iPod touch® or iTunes®.

#### • Playback of DSD and FLAC files via USB and networks

This unit supports the playback of high resolution audio formats such as DSD (2.8 MHz) and FLAC 192 kHz files. It provides high quality playback of high resolution files.

- Wireless connection with Bluetooth devices can be carried out easily (☞ p. 96)



You can enjoy music simply by connecting wirelessly with your smartphone, tablet, PC, etc.

- Compatible with the “Marantz Remote App”\* for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone or Android™ devices (Google, Amazon Kindle Fire)

“Marantz Remote App” is application software that allows you to perform basic operations with an iPad, iPhone, Android smartphone or Android tablet such as turning the unit ON/OFF, controlling the volume, and switching the source.

\* Download the appropriate “Marantz Remote App” for your iOS or Android devices. This unit needs to be connected to the same LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN) network that the iPhone or iPod touch is connected to.

- Multi-Room audio (☞ p. 148)

#### 【MAIN ZONE】



#### 【ZONE2】 / 【ZONE3】



You can select and play back the respective inputs in MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

In addition, when the All Zone Stereo function is used, the music being played back in MAIN ZONE can be enjoyed in all the zones at the same time. This is useful when you want to let the BGM propagate throughout the whole house.

- Energy-saving design

This unit is equipped with an auto-standby function that automatically turns off the power supply when the unit is not in use. This helps reduce unnecessary power use.

## Easy operation

- “Setup Assistant” provides easy-to-follow setup instructions

First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.

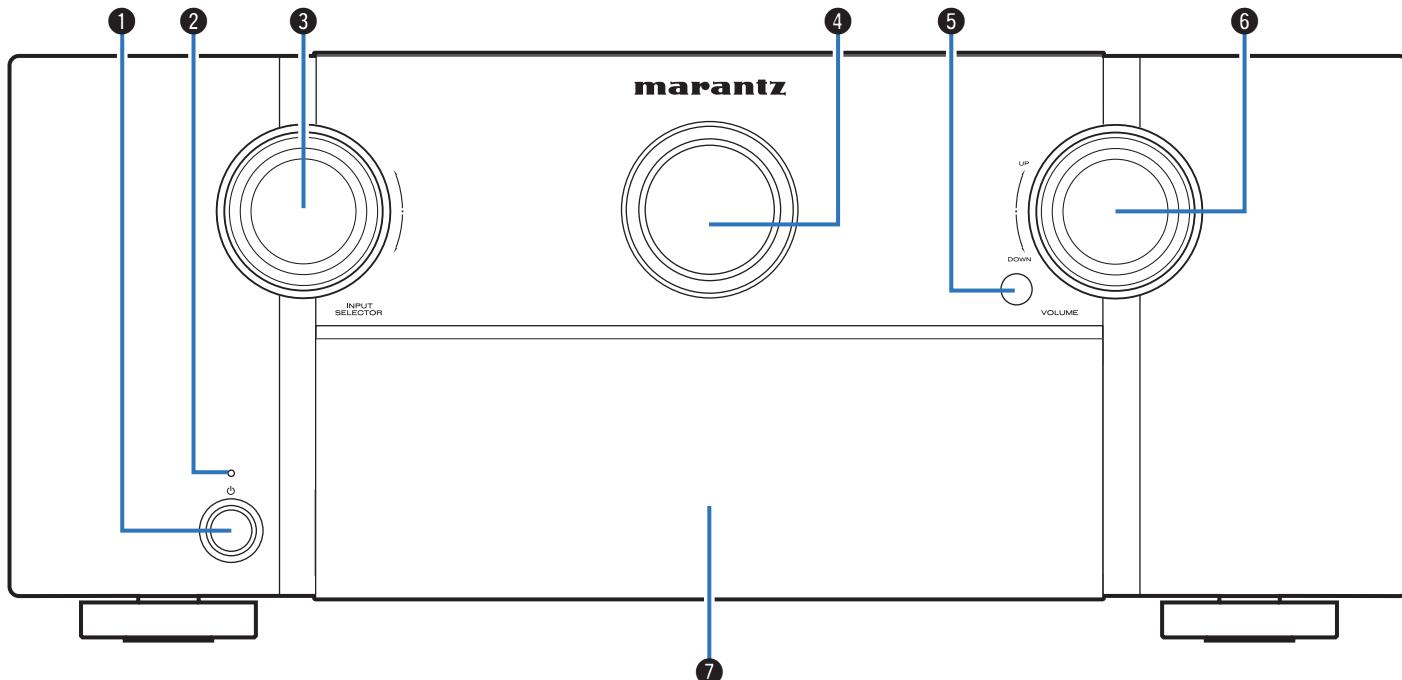
- Easy to use Graphical User Interface

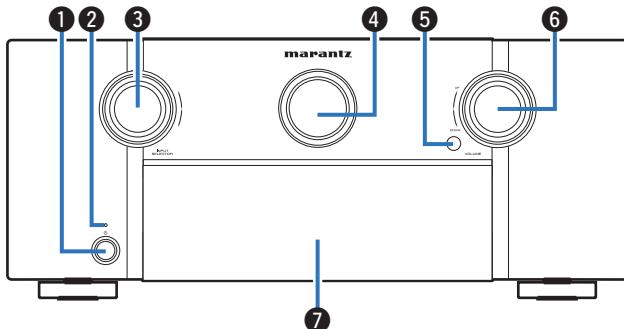
This unit is equipped with a Graphical User Interface for improved operability.



# Part names and functions

## Front panel





### ① Power operation button (⊕)

Used to turn the power of the MAIN ZONE (room where this unit is located) on/off (standby). ([p. 86](#))

### ② Power indicator

This is lit as follows according to the power status:

- Off: Power on
- Red: Normal standby
- Orange:
  - When “HDMI Pass Through” is set to “On” ([p. 208](#))
  - When “HDMI Control” is set to “On” ([p. 209](#))
  - When “IP Control” is set to “Always On” ([p. 261](#))

### ③ INPUT SELECTOR knob

These selects the input source. ([p. 86](#))

### ④ Main display

This displays various pieces of information. ([p. 24](#))

### ⑤ Remote control sensor

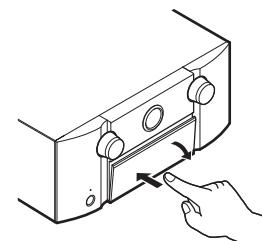
This receives signals from the remote control unit. ([p. 11](#))

### ⑥ VOLUME knob

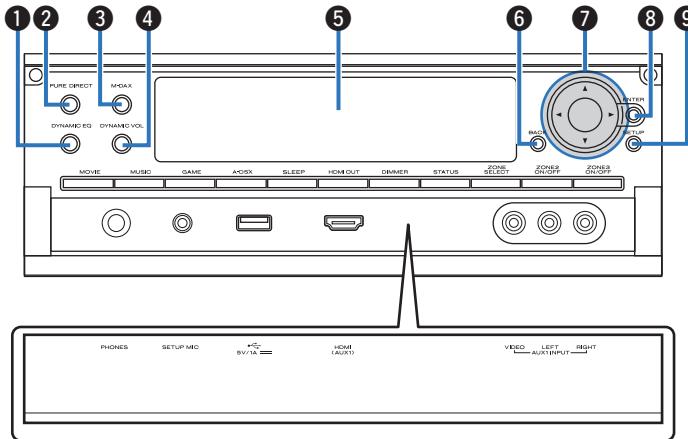
These adjusts the volume level. ([p. 87](#))

### ⑦ Door

When you are using buttons and/or connectors behind the door, press the bottom of the door to open it. Be careful not to catch your fingers when closing the door.



## With the door open



### ③ M-DAX button/indicator

This enables the M-DAX mode. (☞ p. 196)

This lights when the M-DAX mode is selected.

### ④ Dynamic Volume button (DYNAMIC VOL)

This switches the Dynamic Volume settings. (☞ p. 200)

### ⑤ Sub display

This displays various pieces of information. (☞ p. 26)

### ⑥ BACK button

This returns to the previous screen. (☞ p. 186)

### ⑦ Cursor buttons (△▽◀▶)

These select items. (☞ p. 186)

### ⑧ ENTER button

This determines the selection. (☞ p. 186)

### ⑨ SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 186)

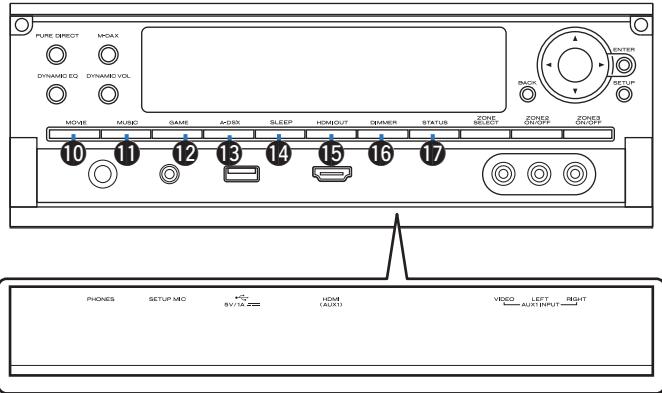
### ① DYNAMIC EQ button

This switches the Dynamic EQ settings. (☞ p. 199)

### ② PURE DIRECT button/indicator

This switches the sound mode between Direct, Pure Direct and Auto. (☞ p. 151 – 152)

This lights when the Pure Direct mode is selected as the sound mode.

**⑩ MOVIE button**

This switches the sound mode to “Movie”. ( p. 150)

**⑪ MUSIC button**

This switches the sound mode to “Music”. ( p. 150)

**⑫ GAME button**

This switches the sound mode to “Game”. ( p. 150)

**⑬ Audyssey DSX® button (A-DSX)**

This switches the Audyssey DSX® settings. ( p. 201)

**⑭ SLEEP button**

This sets the sleep timer. ( p. 167)

**⑮ HDMI OUT button**

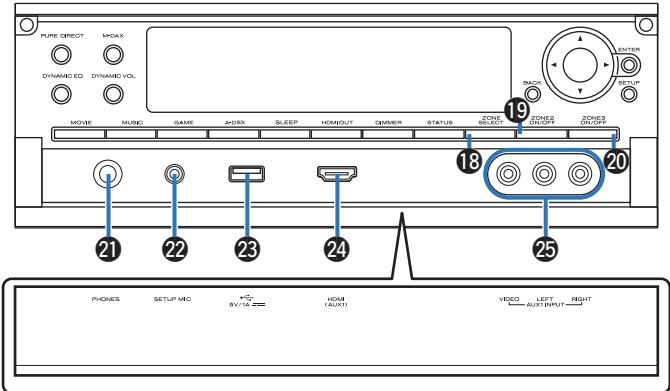
This sets the HDMI monitor output. ( p. 207)

**⑯ DIMMER button**

Each press of this switches the brightness of the display. ( p. 268)

**⑰ STATUS button**

Each press of this switches the status information that is shown on the display. ( p. 90)



#### ⑯ ZONE SELECT button

These switch the zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3) that is operated through the remote control unit. ( p. 181, 186)

#### ⑰ ZONE2 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE2 on/off. ( p. 181)

#### ⑱ ZONE3 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE3 on/off. ( p. 181)

#### ㉑ Headphones jack (PHONES)

This is used to connect headphones.

When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers or from the PRE OUT connectors.

#### NOTE

To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

#### ㉒ SETUP MIC jack

This is used to connect the supplied Sound calibration microphone. ( p. 225)

#### ㉓ USB port

This is used to connect USB storages (such as USB memory devices) and the USB cable supplied with iPod. ( p. 74)

#### ㉔ AUX1 HDMI connector

This is used to connect HDMI output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. ( p. 71)

#### ㉕ AUX1 INPUT connector

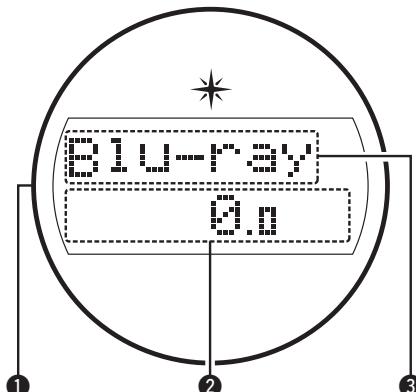
Used to connect analog output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. ( p. 71)

## Display

### ■ Main Display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

#### □ Standard display



##### ① Light illumination

When the power to this device is switched on, the surrounding area is lit blue. The settings can be changed so the light does not switch on.  
(☞ p. 177)

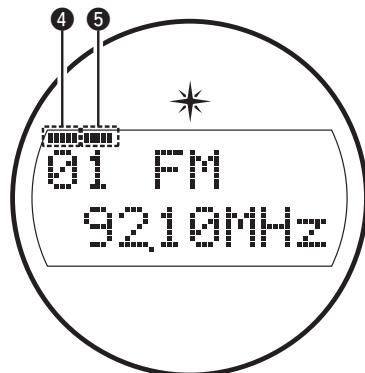
##### ② Volume indicator

##### ③ Input source indicator

The currently selected input source name is displayed.  
If the input source name has been changed using "Source Rename" (☞ p. 220) in the menu, the input source name after the change is displayed.

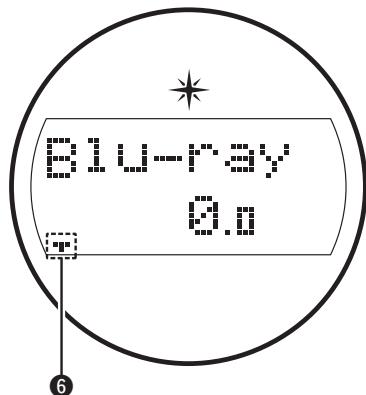
#### □ Tuner display

These light up according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "HD Radio".

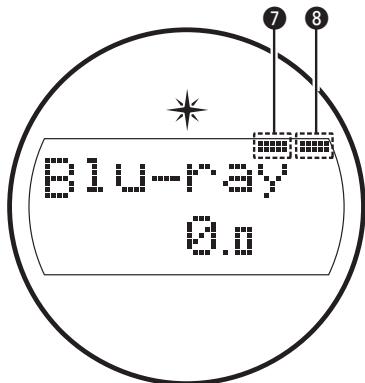


④ Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

⑤ In the FM mode, this lights up when receiving stereo broadcasts.

Sleep timer indicator

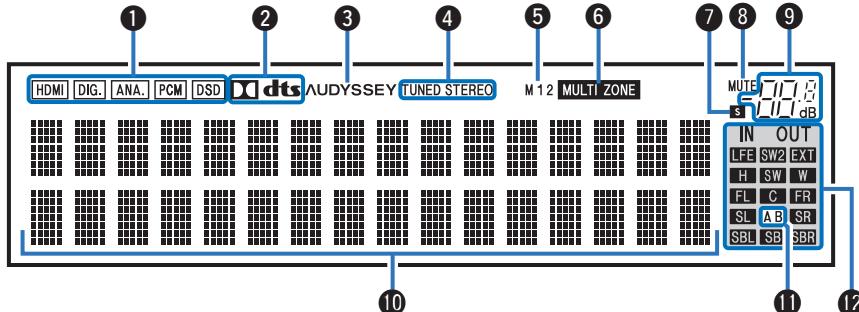
⑥ This lights up when the sleep mode is selected. ( p. 167)

 ZONE2/ZONE3 power on display

⑦ This lights up when ZONE2 (separate room) power is turned on.  
( p. 181)

⑧ This lights up when ZONE3 (separate room) power is turned on.  
( p. 181)

## ■ Sub Display



### ① Input signal indicators

The respective indicator will light corresponding to the input signal.  
(☞ p. 221)

### ② Decoder indicators

These light when Dolby or DTS signals are input or when the Dolby or DTS decoder is running.

### ③ Audyssey® indicator

This lights when "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ", "Dynamic Volume", "Audyssey DSX®" or "Audyssey LFC™" is set. (☞ p. 198 - 201)

### ④ Tuner reception mode indicators

These light up according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to "HD Radio".

**TUNED:** Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

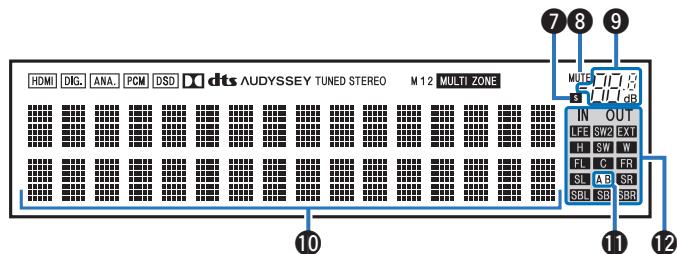
**STEREO:** Lights up when receiving FM stereo broadcasts.

### ⑤ Monitor output indicator

These light according to the HDMI monitor output setting. When set to "Auto(Dual)", the indicators light according to connection status.

### ⑥ MULTI ZONE indicator

This lights up when ZONE2 or ZONE3 (separate room) power is turned on. (☞ p. 181)



### ⑦ Sleep timer indicator

This lights when the sleep mode is selected. ([p. 168](#))

### ⑧ MUTE indicator

This blinks while the sound is muted. ([p. 87, 182](#))

### ⑨ Volume indicator

### ⑩ Information display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

### ⑪ Front speaker indicator

This lights according to the setting of the front A and B speakers.

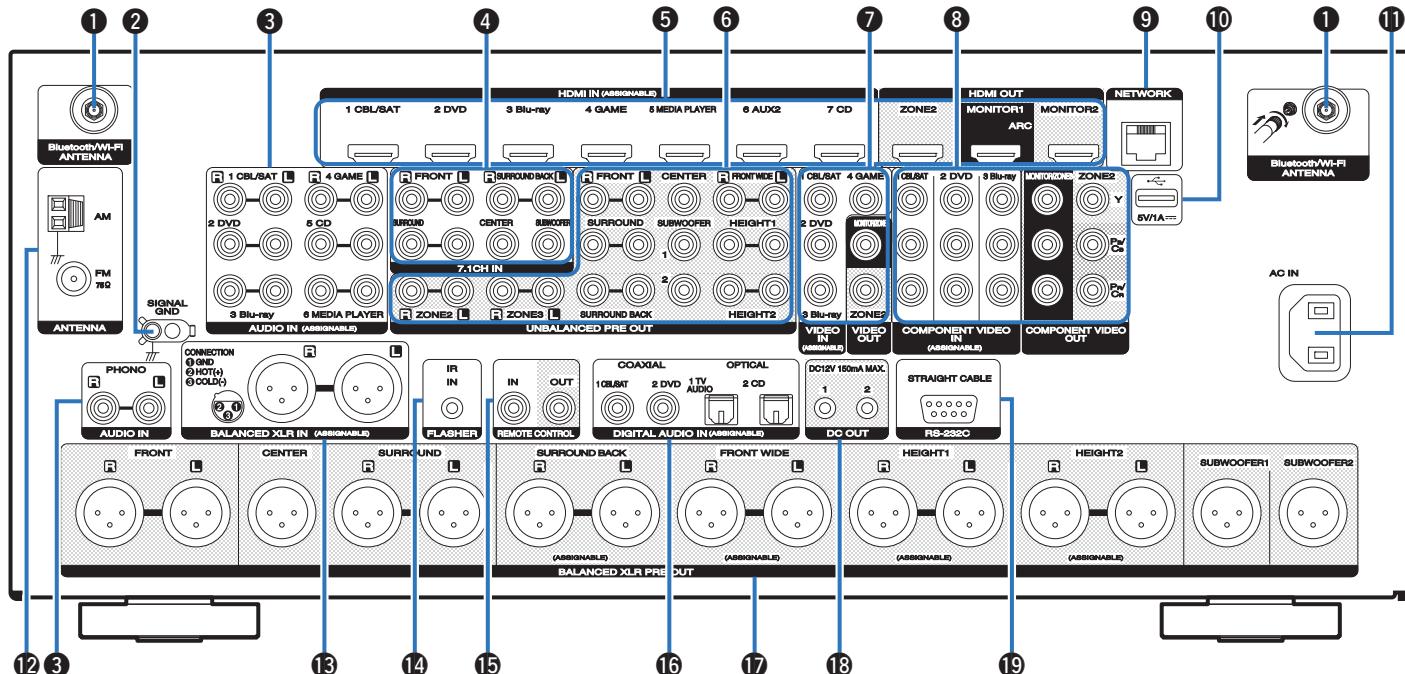
### ⑫ Input/output signal channel indicators

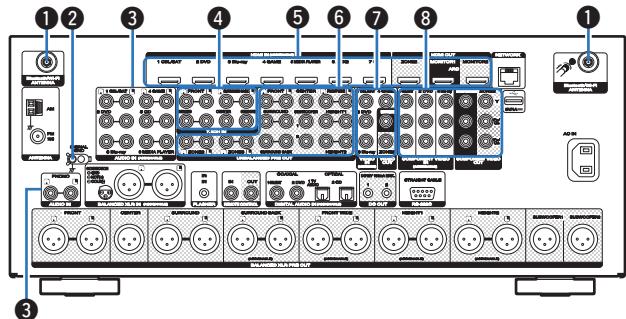
The channel for input/output signals is displayed according to the setting configured for "Channel Indicators". ([p. 268](#))

- When "Channel Indicators" is set to "Output" (Default)  
These light when audio signals are being output from the speakers.
- When "Channel Indicators" is set to "Input"  
These light corresponding to the channels that include the input signals.

When playing HD Audio sources, the **EXT** indicator lights when a signal from an extension channel (a channel other than the front, center, surround, surround back, front height, front wide or LFE channel) is input.

## Rear panel

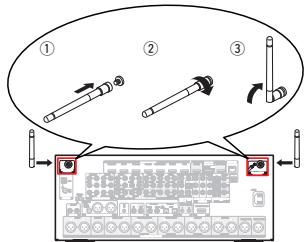




### ① Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors

Used to connect the included external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity when connecting to a network via wireless LAN, or when connecting to a handheld device via Bluetooth. ( p. 80)

- ① Place the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity evenly over the screw terminal of rear.
- ② Turn clockwise until the antennas is fully connected.
- ③ Rotate the antenna upwards for best reception.



### ② SIGNAL GND terminal

Used to connect a ground wire for the turntable. ( p. 72)

### ③ Analog audio connectors (AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with analog audio connectors. ( p. 69)

### ④ 7.1-channel input connectors (7.1CH IN)

Used to connect to a device that has multi-channel audio output connectors. ( p. 73)

### ⑤ HDMI connectors

Used to connect devices equipped with HDMI connectors. ( p. 64)

### ⑥ UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connectors

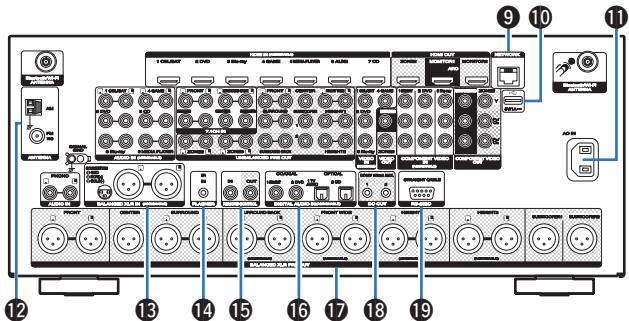
Used to connect a power amp with UNBALANCED RCA input connectors. ( p. 48)

### ⑦ Video connectors (VIDEO)

Used to connect devices equipped with video connectors. ( p. 66)

### ⑧ Component video connectors (COMPONENT VIDEO)

Used to connect devices equipped with component video connectors. ( p. 66)

**⑨ NETWORK connector**

Used to connect to a LAN cable when connecting to a wired LAN network. ([☞ p. 79](#))

**⑩ USB port**

This is used to connect USB storages (such as USB memory devices) and the USB cable supplied with iPod. ([☞ p. 74](#))

**⑪ AC inlet (AC IN)**

Used to connect the power cord. ([☞ p. 84](#))

**⑫ FM/AM antenna terminals (ANTENNA)**

Used to connect FM antennas and AM loop antennas. ([☞ p. 77](#))

**⑬ BALANCED XLR IN terminals**

Used to connect devices equipped with BALANCED XLR output terminals. ([☞ p. 68](#))

**⑭ FLASHER IN jack**

Used when using a control BOX or other such control devices to control this unit.

**⑮ REMOTE CONTROL jacks**

Used to connect infrared receivers/transmitters in order to operate this unit and external devices from a different room. ([☞ p. 81](#))

**⑯ Digital audio connectors (DIGITAL AUDIO)**

Used to connect devices equipped with digital audio connectors. ([☞ p. 47](#))

**⑰ Balanced XLR OUT terminals**

Used to connect a power amp with BALANCED XLR input terminals. ([☞ p. 46](#))

**⑱ DC OUT jack**

Used to connect devices equipped with the trigger function. ([☞ p. 83](#))

**⑲ RS-232C connector**

Used to connect home automation controller devices fitted with RS-232C connectors. Consult the owner's manual of the home automation controller for more information about serial control of this unit.

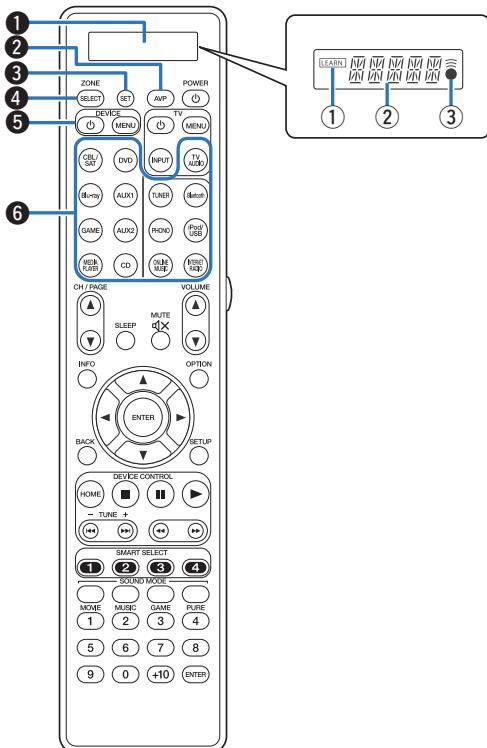
Perform the operation below beforehand.

- ① Turn on the power of this unit.
- ② Turn off the power of this unit from the external controller.
- ③ Check that the unit is in the standby mode.

**NOTE**

Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

## Remote control unit



### ① Display

#### ① LEARN indicator

This is lit when setting the learning function for the remote control unit. ([p. 282](#))

#### ② Information display

- This displays “AVP” when operating this unit.
- This displays the input source name when operating an external device.
- This displays “TV” when operating TV.

#### ③ ● indicator

This is lit when signals are sent from the remote control unit.

### ② AVP operation button

When preset codes are registered to the remote control unit, press this button and then operate the menu on the unit.

### ③ SET button

This is used for various settings on the remote control unit. ([p. 274, 282, 285, 286](#))

### ④ ZONE SELECT button

These switch the zone (MAIN ZONE, ZONE2, ZONE3) that is operated through the remote control unit. ([p. 181, 186](#))

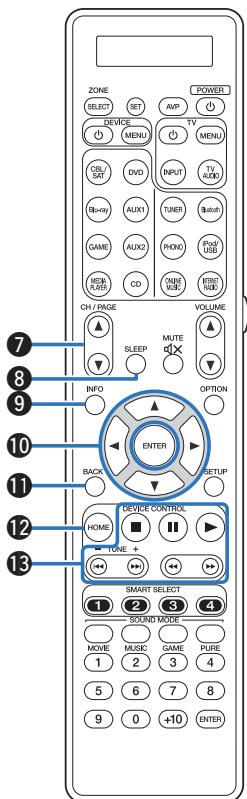
### ⑤ Device operation buttons (DEVICE ⏪ / DEVICE MENU)

These turn the power of external devices on/off and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons.

([p. 275](#))

### ⑥ Input source select buttons

These select the input source. ([p. 86, 181](#))



### ⑦ SLEEP button

This sets the sleep timer. ([p. 167](#))

### ⑧ Channel/page search buttons (CH/PAGE ▲▼)

These select radio stations registered to presets or switch pages. ([p. 90, 107](#))

### ⑨ Information button (INFO)

This displays the status information on the TV screen. ([p. 269](#))

### ⑩ Cursor buttons (△▽◀▶)

These select items. ([p. 186](#))

### ⑪ BACK button

This returns to the previous screen. ([p. 186](#))

### ⑫ HOME button

This takes you to the Home screen (Top screen) when the input source is Online Music or iPod/USB. ([p. 90](#))

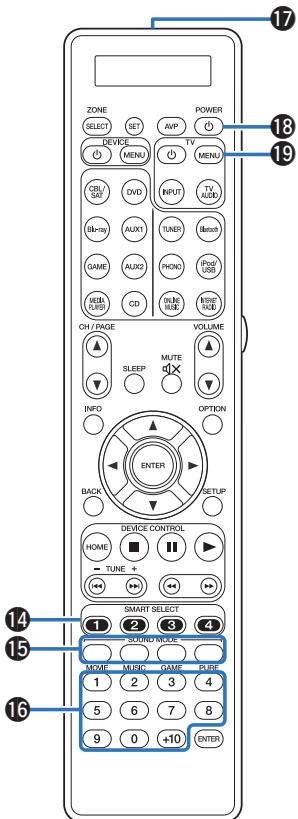
### ⑬ System buttons

These perform playback related operations. ([p. 90](#))

- Skip buttons (◀◀, ▶▶)
- Play button (▶)
- Search buttons (◀◀, ▶▶)
- Pause button (II)
- Stop button (■)

### Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, -)

These select either FM broadcast or AM broadcast. ([p. 103](#))



#### ⑭ SMART SELECT buttons (1 - 4)

These call up settings registered to each button, such as input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (☞ p. 169)

#### ⑮ SOUND MODE buttons

These select the sound mode. (☞ p. 149)

- MOVIE button
- MUSIC button
- GAME button
- PURE button

#### ⑯ Number buttons

These enter numbers into the unit. (☞ p. 103)

#### ⑰ Remote control signal transmitter

This transmits signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 11)

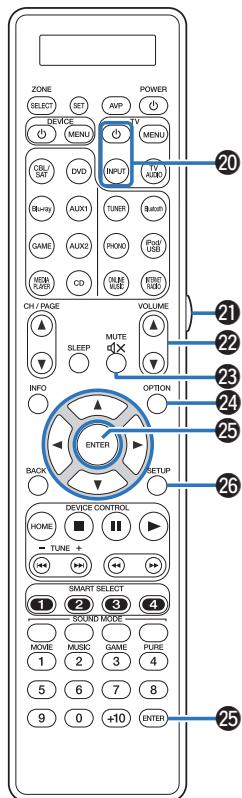
#### ⑱ POWER button (ø)

This turns the power on/off. (☞ p. 86, 181)

#### ⑲ TV operation buttons (TV ø / TV MENU / TV INPUT)

These turn the TV power on/off, switch the TV input and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons.

(☞ p. 278)



## 20 TV operation buttons (TV ⏹ / TV INPUT)

These turn the TV power on/off, switch the TV input and call up menus. Preset codes need to be registered in order to use these buttons.

(☞ p. 278)

## 21 Light button

This turns on the backlight for approx. 2 seconds. (☞ p. 285)

## 22 VOLUME buttons (▲▼)

These adjusts the volume level. (☞ p. 87, 182)

## 23 MUTE button (🔇)

This mutes the output audio. (☞ p. 87, 182)

## 24 OPTION button

This displays the option menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 138)

## 25 ENTER button

This determines the selection. (☞ p. 186)

## 26 SETUP button

This displays the menu on the TV screen. (☞ p. 186)

## ■ Contents

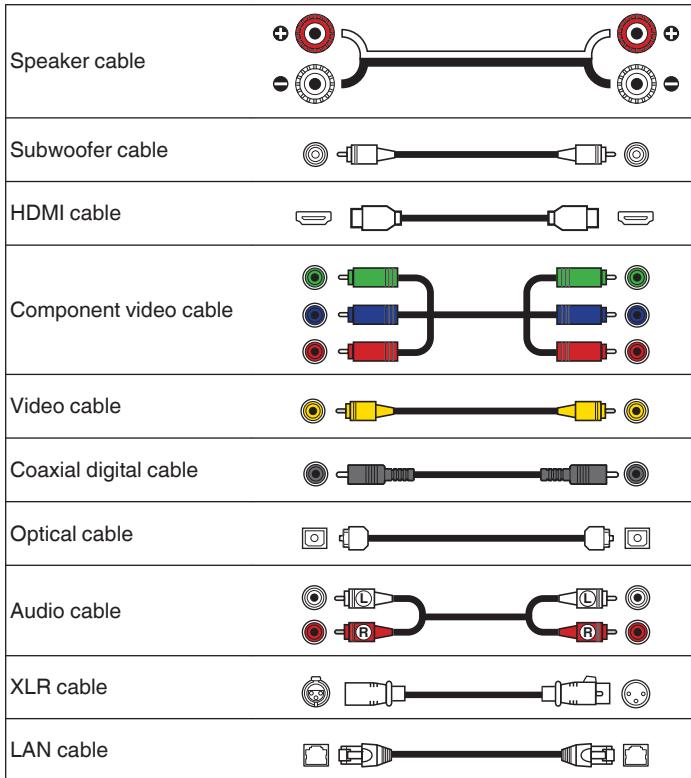
Connecting a power amp	36
Connecting a TV	63
Connecting a playback device	67
Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port	74
Connecting an HD Radio receiver	77
Connecting to a home network (LAN)	79
Connecting an external control device	81
Connecting the power cord	84

### NOTE

- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the “Setup Assistant” is running, follow the instructions in the “Setup Assistant” (page 9 in the separate “Quick Start Guide”) screen for making connections. (During “Setup Assistant” operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

## ■ Cables used for connections

Provide necessary cables according to the devices you want to connect.



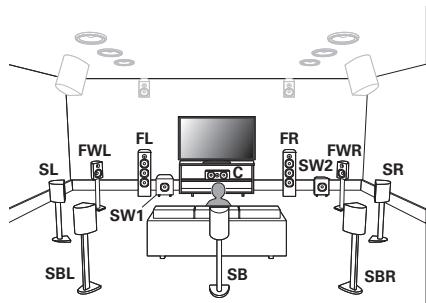
# Connecting a power amp

This section describes how to install speakers and connect them to this unit.

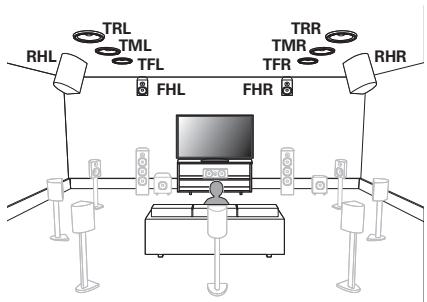
## Speaker installation

Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room.

Speaker installation is explained using this example of a typical installation.



<b>FL/FR</b> (Front speaker left/right):	Place the FRONT left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position. The distance between each speaker and your TV should also be the same.
<b>C</b> (Center speaker):	Place the CENTER speaker in between the front speakers and above or below your TV.
<b>SL/SR</b> (Surround speaker left/right):	Place the SURROUND left and right speakers an equal distance to the left and right sides of the main listening position. If you don't have surround back speakers, move the surround speakers slightly behind your listening position.
<b>SBL/SBR</b> (Surround back speaker left/right):	Place the SURROUND BACK left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position and directly behind the main listening position. When using a single surround back speaker (SB), place it directly behind the listening position.
<b>FWL/FWR</b> (Front wide speakers left/right):	Place the FRONT WIDE left and right speakers outside of the front left and right speakers so that there is an equal distance between all front speakers.
<b>SW 1/2</b> (Subwoofer) :	Place the SUBWOOFER at a convenient location near the front speakers. If you have two subwoofers, place them asymmetrically across the front of your room.



**FHL/FHR** (Front height speaker left/right):

Place the FRONT HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the front speakers. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.

**TFL/TFR** (Top front speaker left/right):

Mount the TOP FRONT left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly in front of your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

**TML/TMR** (Top middle speaker left/right):

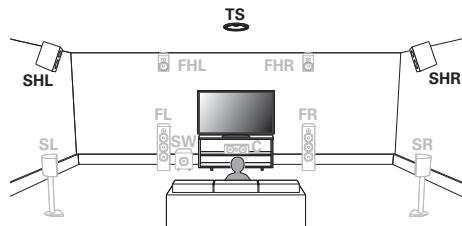
Mount the TOP MIDDLE left and right speakers directly above the main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

**TRL/TRR** (Top rear speaker left/right):

Mount the TOP REAR left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly behind your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

**RHL/RHR** (Rear height speaker left/right):

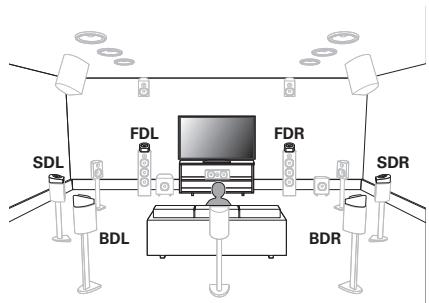
Place the REAR HEIGHT left and right speakers directly behind the main listening position. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

**SHL/SHR (Surround height left/right):** Place the SURROUND HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the surround speakers.

**TS (Top surround):** Place the TOP SURROUND speaker directly above the main listening position and aligned with the center channel speaker.

For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.



**FDL/FDR** (Front Dolby speaker left/right):

Place the FRONT Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the front speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled integrated with a front speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the front speaker.

**SDL/SDR** (Surround Dolby speaker left/right):

Place the SURROUND Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround speaker.

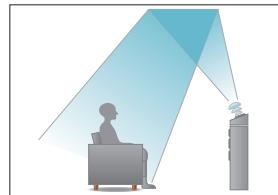
**BDL/BDR** (Back Dolby speaker left/right):

Place the BACK Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround back speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround back speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround back speaker.

### About Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers reflect the sound off the ceiling to allow the sound to come from over your head by using a special upward-pointing speaker that is placed on the floor.

You can enjoy the Dolby Atmos 3D sound even in an environment where speakers cannot be installed on the ceiling.





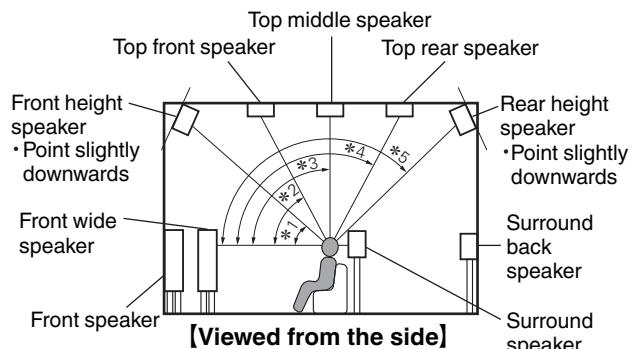
- This unit is compatible with Audyssey DSX®, Dolby Atmos, DTS Neo:X and DTS:X which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation. (☞ p. 330, 331, 335)

When using Audyssey DSX®, install front wide speakers or front height speakers.

- Dolby Atmos is not supported in a 5.1ch or less speaker configuration.

### Update (DTS:X)

- DTS:X can be selected regardless of the speaker configuration.
- DTS Neo:X is no longer supported once you update to DTS:X.
- Use the illustration below as a guide for how high each speaker should be installed. The height does not need to be exactly the same.



\*1 30° - 45°

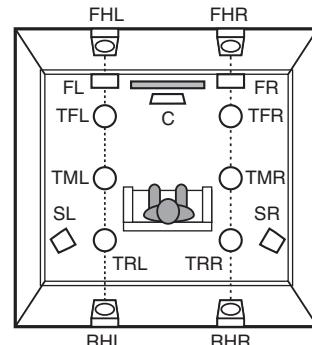
\*2 30° - 55°

\*3 65° - 100°

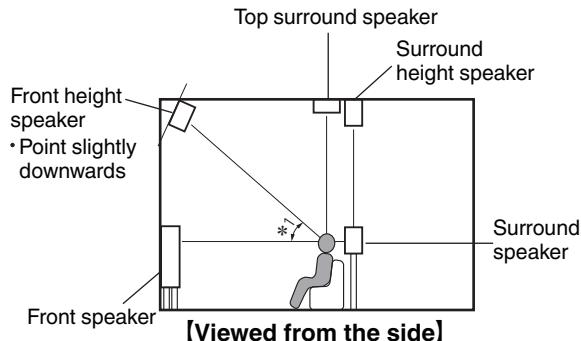
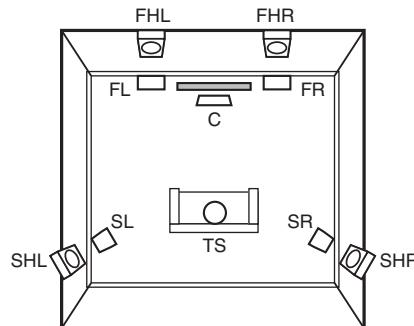
\*4 125° - 150°

\*5 135° - 150°

### Height speakers layout

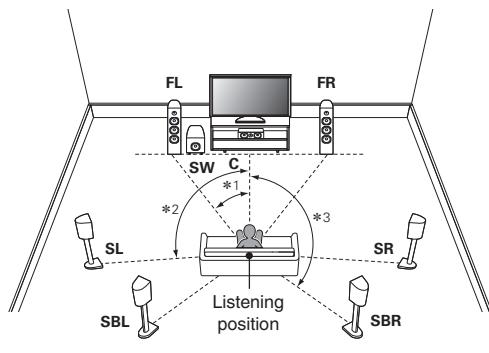


**[Viewed from the top]**

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)****Height speakers layout**

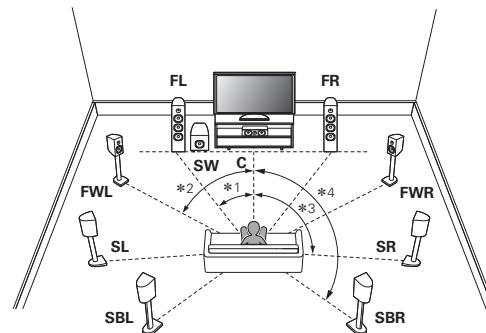
For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.

■ When 7.1-channel speakers are installed using surround back speakers



\*1: 22° - 30° \*2: 55° - 60° \*3: 90° - 110°

■ When 9.1-channel speakers are installed using front wide speakers

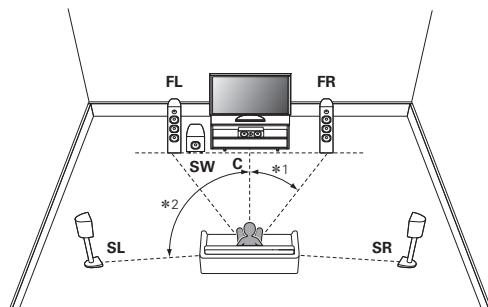


\*1: 22° - 30° \*2: 55° - 60° \*3: 90° - 110° \*4: 135° - 150°



When using a single surround back speaker, place it directly behind the listening position.

## ■ When 5.1-channel speakers are installed

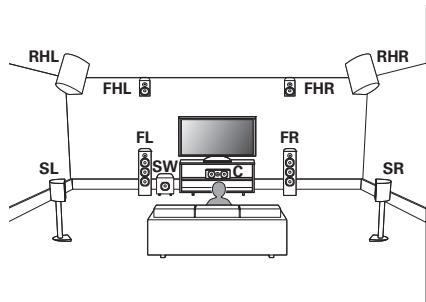


\*1:22° - 30° \*2:120°

## ■ Layout including height speakers and ceiling speakers

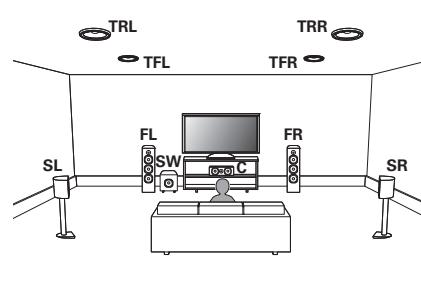
### □ Height speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front height/rear height speakers.



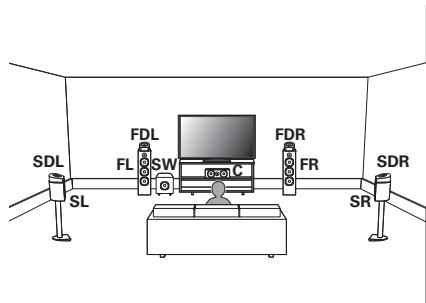
### □ Ceiling speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and top front/top rear speakers.



## ❑ Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker layout example

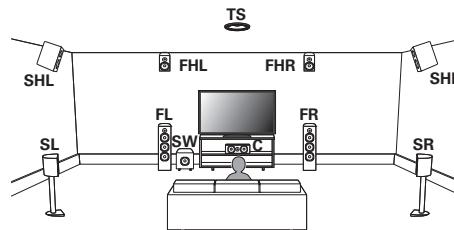
Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front Dolby/surround Dolby speakers.



## Upgrade (Euro-3D)

### ❑ Euro-3D layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel speakers with Front Height/Surround Height/Top Surround.



For the best Euro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of surround height speakers.

## Connecting a power amp

- Connect a power amp (sold separately) to the PRE OUT connector of this unit.
- This unit has UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connector and BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connector. Connect to the correct connector for your power amp. If your power amp has both connectors, connect to either of them.
- Connect the speakers to the power amp.
- For details on speaker connections, see the User Guide for the power amp.
- This section shows how to make a 11.1-channel connection.  
For how to make other speaker connections, see page [50](#).

[AV8802 BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connector PIN arrangement]



- ① GND (Ground)
- ② HOT (+)
- ③ COLD (-)

The PIN arrangement in this device uses the European method.

In the USA method, ② is COLD, and ③ is HOT.

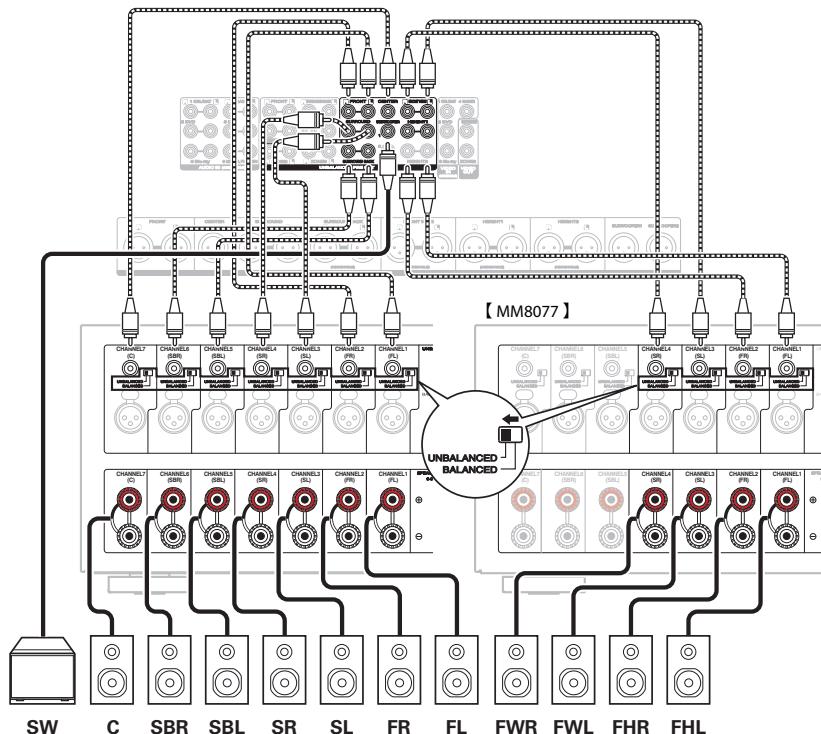
When connecting a device that utilizes the USA type of PIN arrangement, replace the ② and ③ plugs on one side of the balanced cable.

### NOTE

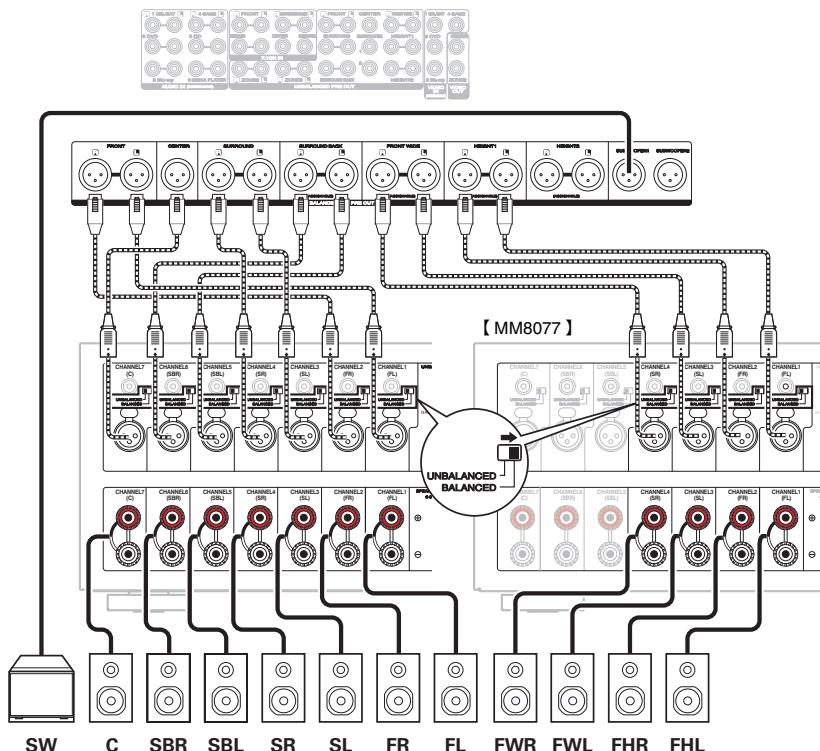
- Do not short the HOT and GND or COLD and GND for use.
- Disconnect this unit's power plug from the power outlet before connecting the speakers.  
Also, turn off the power amp and subwoofer.

## ■ Example of connections to Marantz MM8077 power amp

### □ Connecting the UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connector



## □ Connecting the BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connector

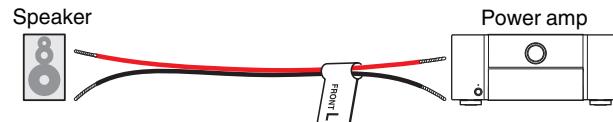


## ■ About the cable labels (supplied) for channel identification

Channel	Color
FRONT L	White
FRONT R	Red
CENTER	Green
SURROUND L	Light blue
SURROUND R	Blue
SURROUND BACK L	Beige
SURROUND BACK R	Brown
FRONT WIDE L	Light Yellow
FRONT WIDE R	Yellow
FRONT HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
FRONT HEIGHT R	Yellow
TOP FRONT L	Light Yellow
TOP FRONT R	Yellow
TOP MIDDLE L	Light Yellow
TOP MIDDLE R	Yellow
TOP REAR L	Light Yellow
TOP REAR R	Yellow
REAR HEIGHT L	Light Yellow
REAR HEIGHT R	Yellow
FRONT DOLBY L	Light Yellow
FRONT DOLBY R	Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY L	Light Yellow
SURROUND DOLBY R	Yellow
BACK DOLBY L	Light Yellow
BACK DOLBY R	Yellow
SUBWOOFER	Black

Refer to the table and attach the label to each speaker cable.  
This makes it easier to connect the speakers to the power amp.

### [ How to attach the cable labels ]



## Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings

This system configuration plays back 11-channels. You can create speaker systems such as a bi-amp connection by changing the “Amp Assign” settings. Perform “Amp Assign” settings to suit the number of rooms and speaker configuration to be installed. (☞ p. 233)

Playback speaker in MAIN ZONE	“Amp Assign” settings	Connection page
5.1-channel playback	11.1ch (Default)	<a href="#">53</a>
7.1-channel playback (surround back)	11.1ch (Default)	<a href="#">54</a>
9.1-channel playback	11.1ch (Default)	<a href="#">55</a>
11.1-channel playback	11.1ch (Default)	<a href="#">57</a>
9.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)	9.1ch (Bi-Amp)	<a href="#">58</a>
9.1-channel playback + front speakers of second unit	9.1ch + Front B	<a href="#">59</a>
Dolby Atmos playback	Dolby Atmos	<a href="#">60</a>



**Update (DTS:X)**

You can enjoy regardless of the speaker configuration.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

Playback speaker in each zone			“Amp Assign” settings	Connection page
MAIN ZONE	ZONE2	ZONE3		
Auro-3D	Not used	Not used	Auro-3D	62

The sound mode that can be selected varies according to the speaker configuration. See “Relationship between sound modes and channel output” (☞ p. 318) for the sound modes that are supported.

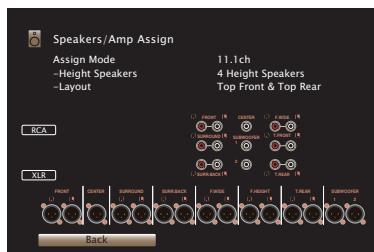
The following pages provide basic connection examples.





In addition to the connections described in (☞ p. 53 - 61), this unit allows for various speaker connections with the “Amp Assign” setting.

Also refer to the menu screen in “View Terminal Config.” on the “Amp Assign” setting screen, which shows how to make connections in your environment.



## ■ Standard configuration and connection

Up to 11.2-channels can be connected by using either UNBALANCED RCA connectors or BALANCED XLR connectors.

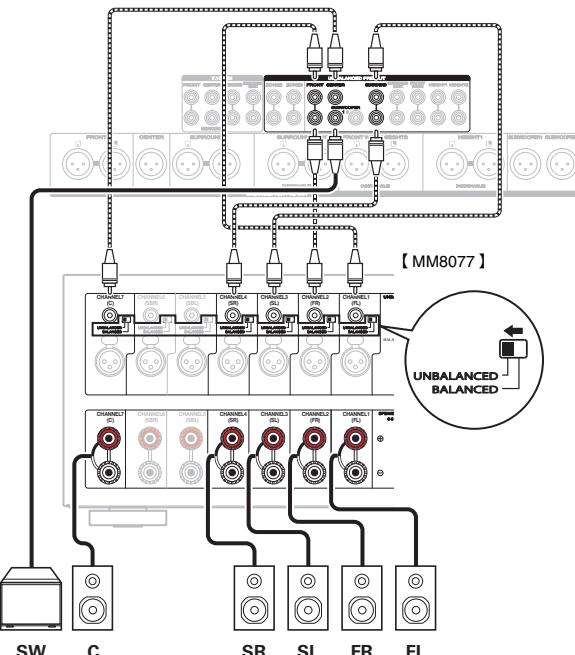
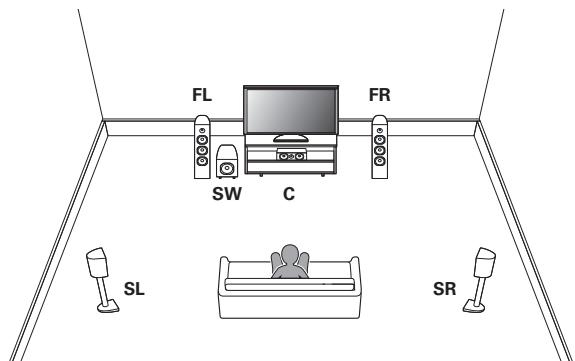
When using UNBALANCED RCA connectors for connection, set the input change switch to "UNBALANCED" on MM8077.

When using BALANCED XLR connectors for connection, set the input change switch to "BALANCED" on MM8077.

This example explains how to make a connection when using UNBALANCED RCA connectors.

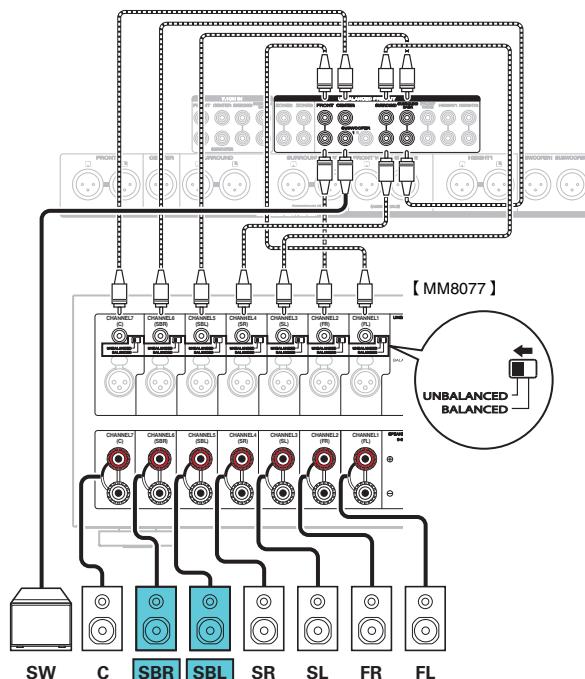
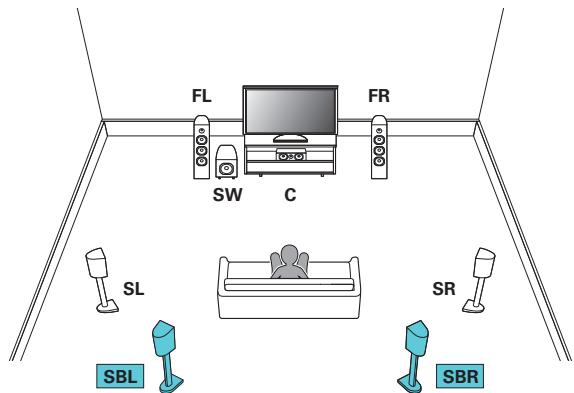
### 5.1-channel playback

This serves as a basic 5.1-channel surround system.



## □ 7.1-channel playback (surround back)

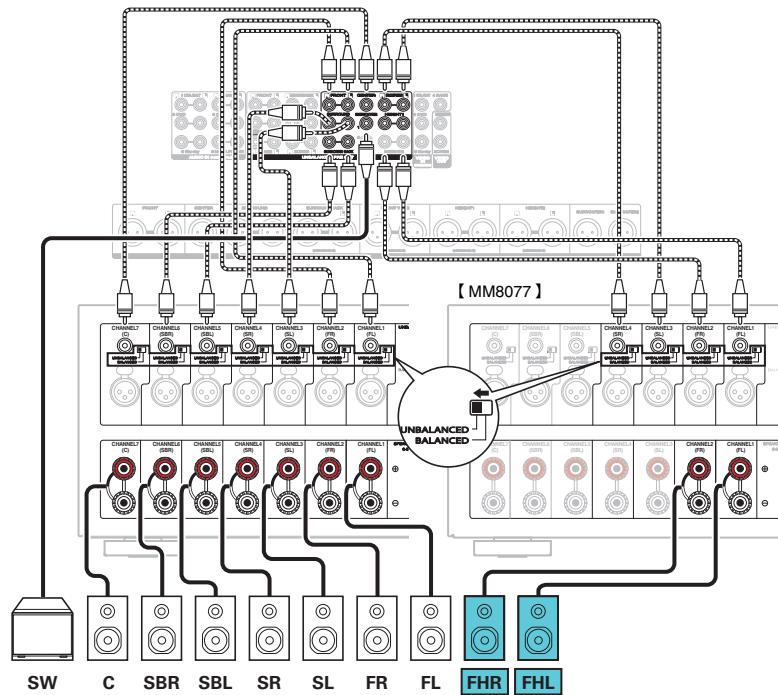
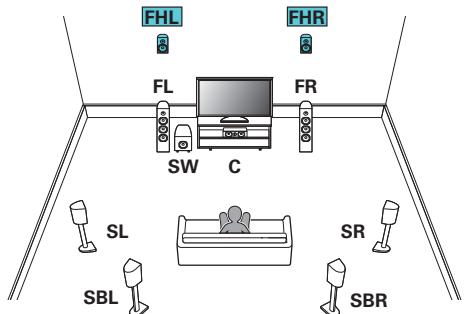
This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with surround back speakers.



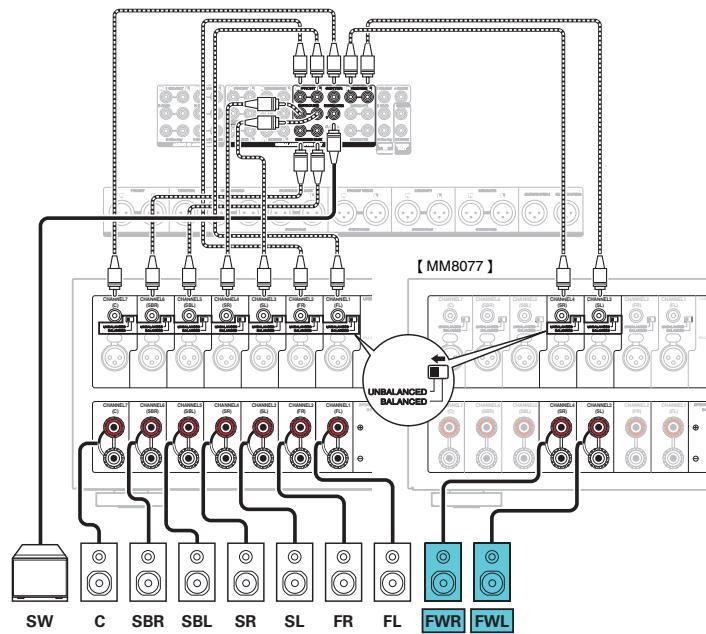
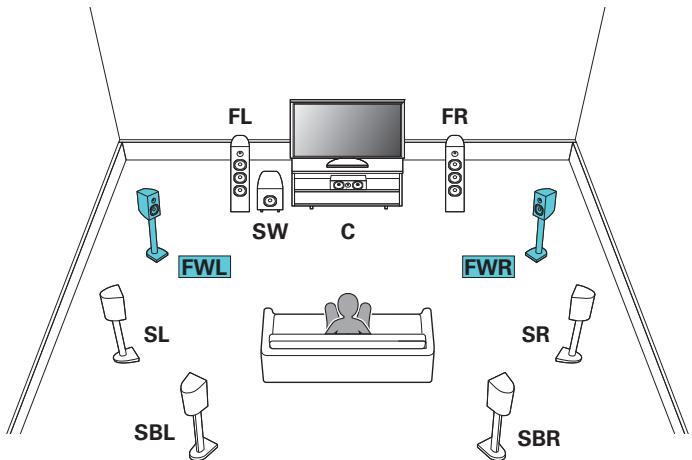
When using a single surround back speaker, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L connector.

## □ 9.1-channel playback (front height)

This system, which is based on a 5.1-channel system, plays back up to 9.1-channels at the same time.



## □ 9.1-channel playback (front wide)

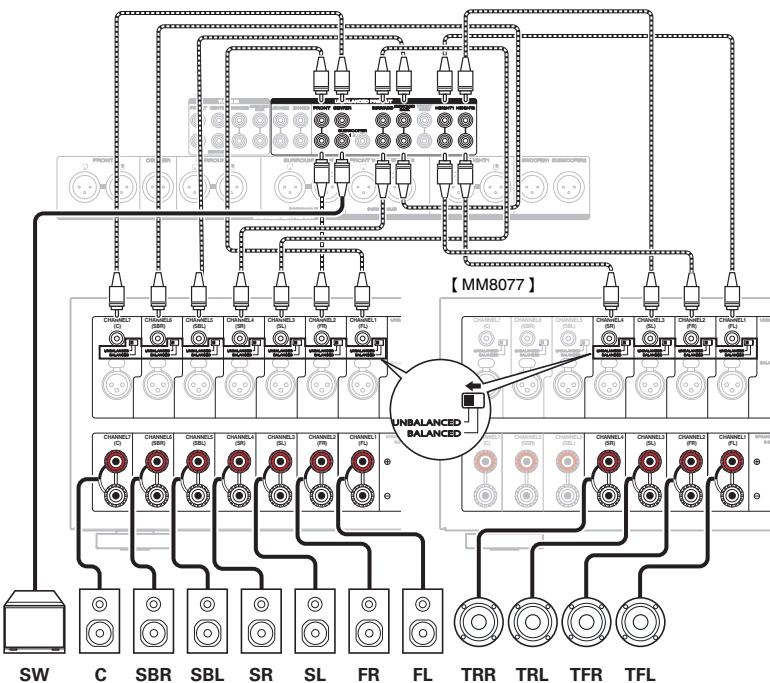
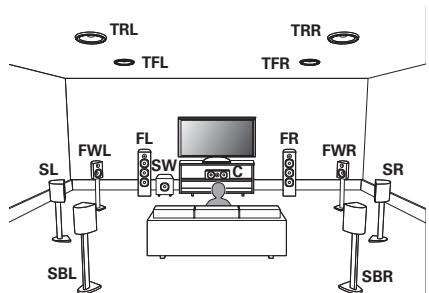


## ■ Advanced connections

### □ 11.1-channel playback

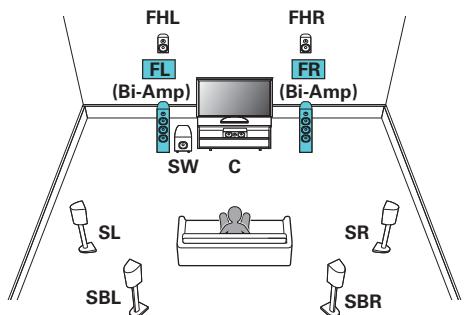
This system, which is based on a 5.1-channel system, plays back up to 11.1-channels at the same time.

You can connect speakers for up to 13-channels for MAIN ZONE.  
When you connect speakers for 12 or more channels, the output speakers automatically switch according to the input signal and sound mode.



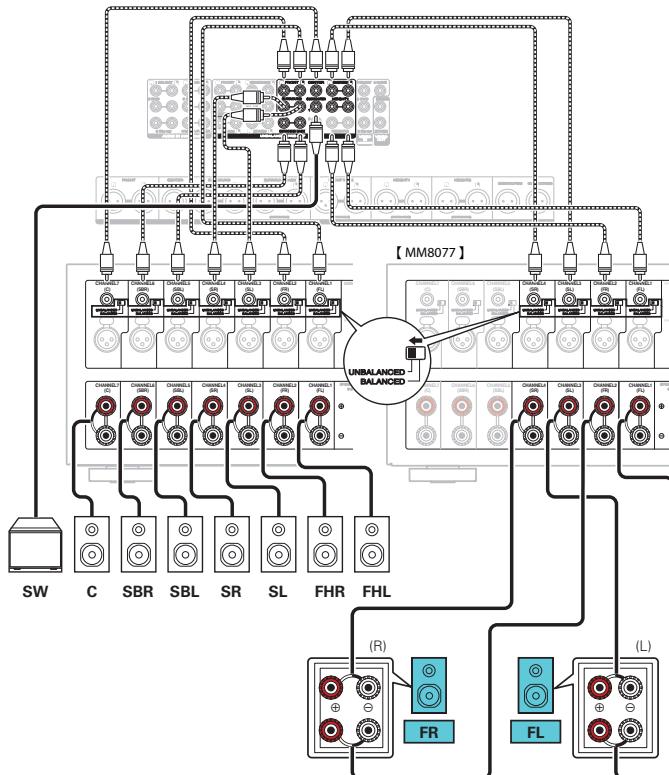
## □ 9.1-channel playback (bi-amp connection of front speakers)

This system plays back 9.1-channels. You can use the bi-amp connection for front speakers. Bi-amp connection is a method to connect separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminal and woofer terminal of a speaker that supports bi-amplification. This connection enables back EMF (power returned without being output) from the woofer to flow into the tweeter without affecting the sound quality, producing a higher sound quality.



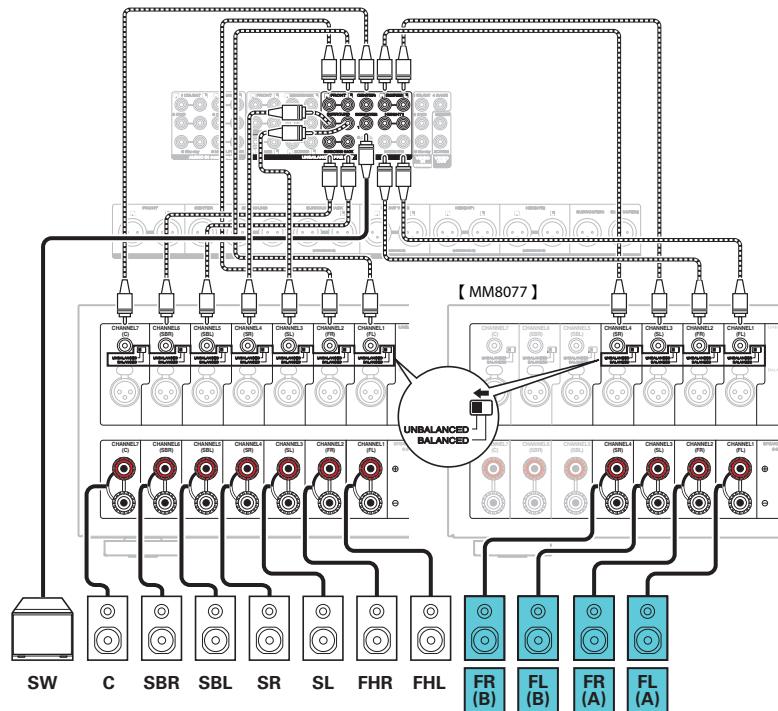
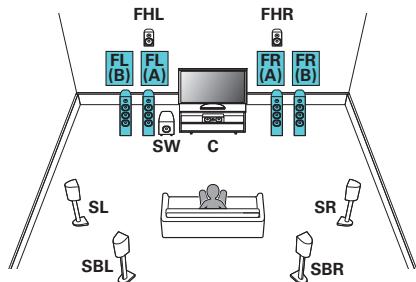
### NOTE

When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker's woofer and tweeter terminals.



## □ 9.1-channel playback + front speakers of second unit

This system enables switching playback between front speakers A and B as desired.

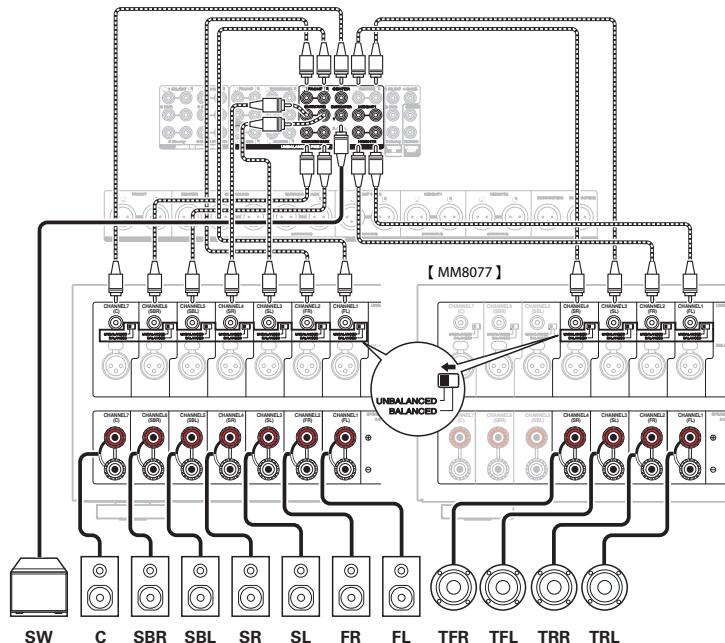
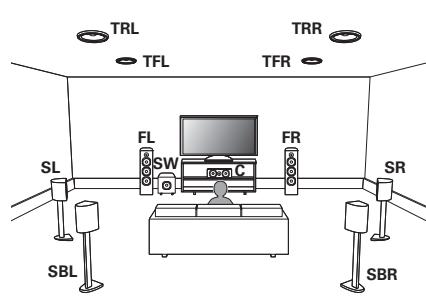


## Dolby Atmos

This speaker configuration is optimized for Dolby Atmos playback.

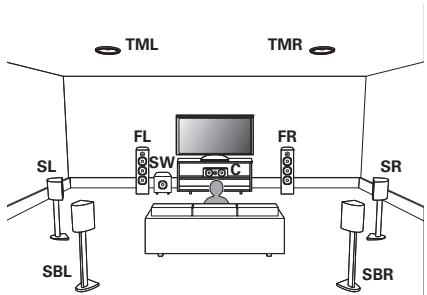
### 11.1-channel system

This system configuration plays back 11.1-channels.

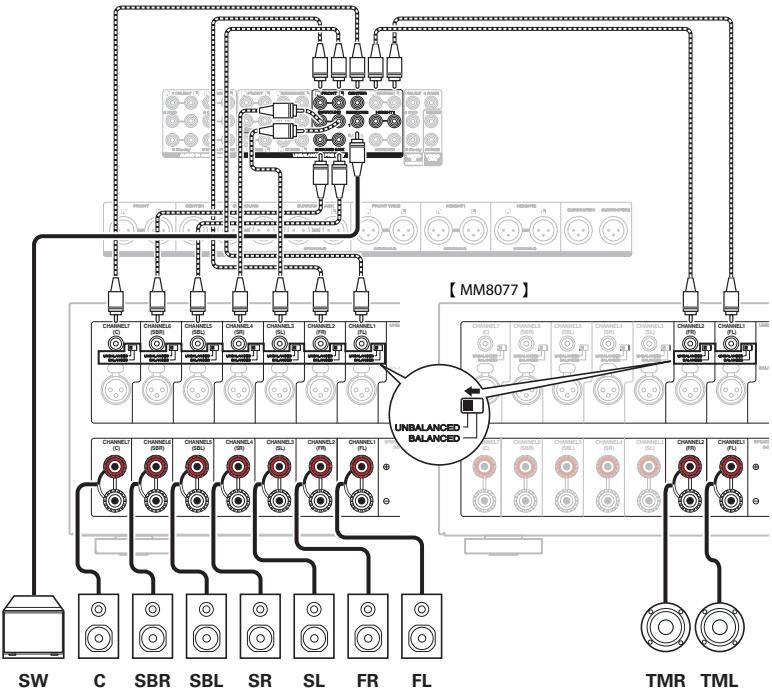


## □ 9.1-channel system

This system configuration plays back 9.1-channels.



- When using front height and rear height speakers for Dolby Atmos playback, set "Assign Mode" to either "9.1ch" or "11.1ch", and set "Height Speakers" to "4 Height Speakers".
- When using Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers for Dolby Atmos playback, set "Assign Mode" to either "9.1ch" or "11.1ch", and set "Height Speakers" to "Using Dolby Speakers".

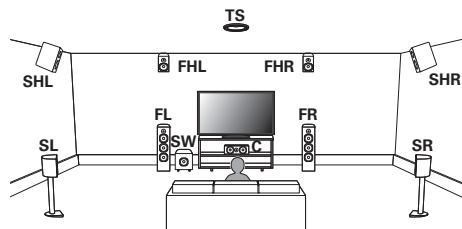


**Upgrade (Auro-3D)****Auro-3D**

This speaker configuration is optimized for Auro-3D playback.

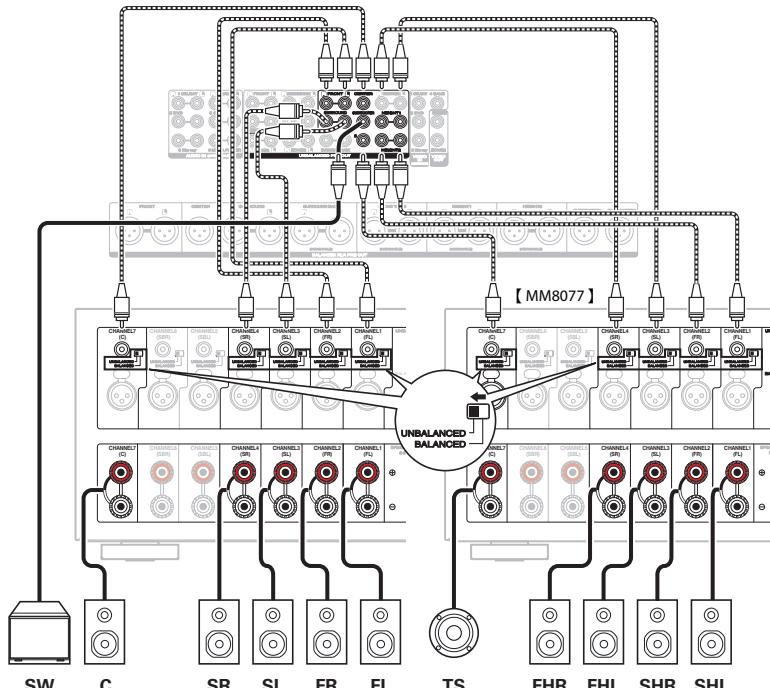
**□ 9.1/10.1-channel system**

Top surround speaker is optional for Auro-3D.



For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers from a Dolby Atmos speaker setup in place of surround height speakers.

When using the rear height speakers, set "Assign Mode" to "9.1ch" or "11.1ch".

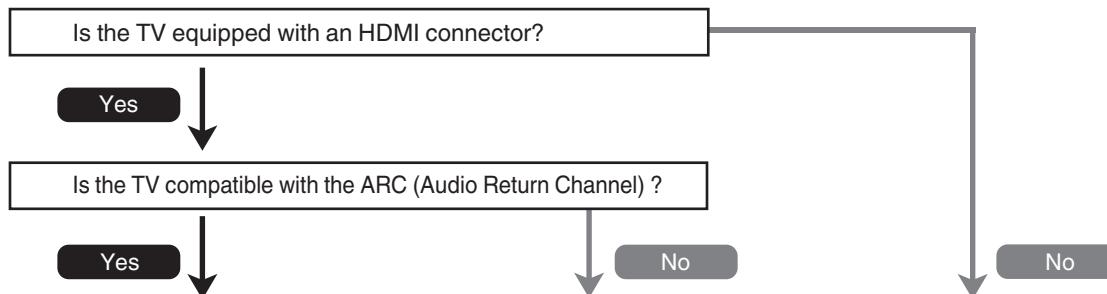


## Connecting a TV

Connect a TV to this unit so that the input video is output to the TV. You can also enjoy audio from the TV on this unit.

How to connect a TV depends on the connectors and functions equipped on the TV.

ARC (Audio Return Channel) function plays TV audio on this unit by sending the TV audio signal to this unit via HDMI cable.



“Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” ([p. 64](#))

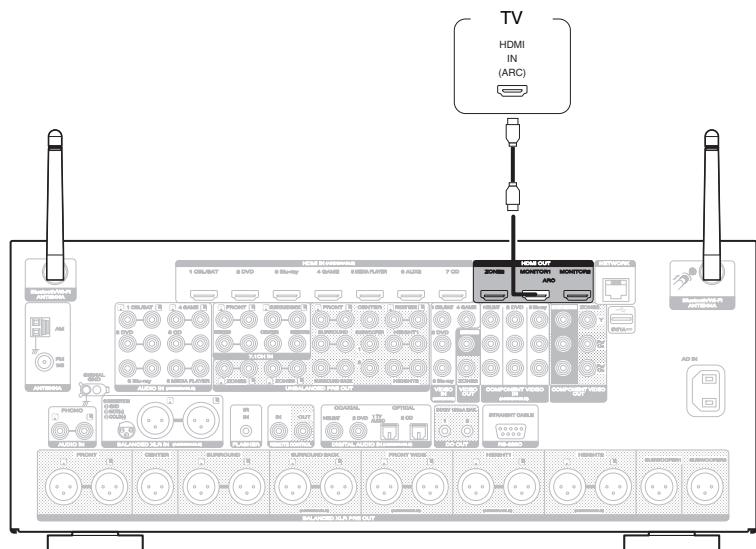
“Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” ([p. 65](#))

“Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” ([p. 66](#))

## Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)

Use an HDMI cable to connect a TV that is compatible with the ARC function to this unit.

Set "HDMI Control" to "On" when using a TV that supports the ARC function. (☞ p. 209)

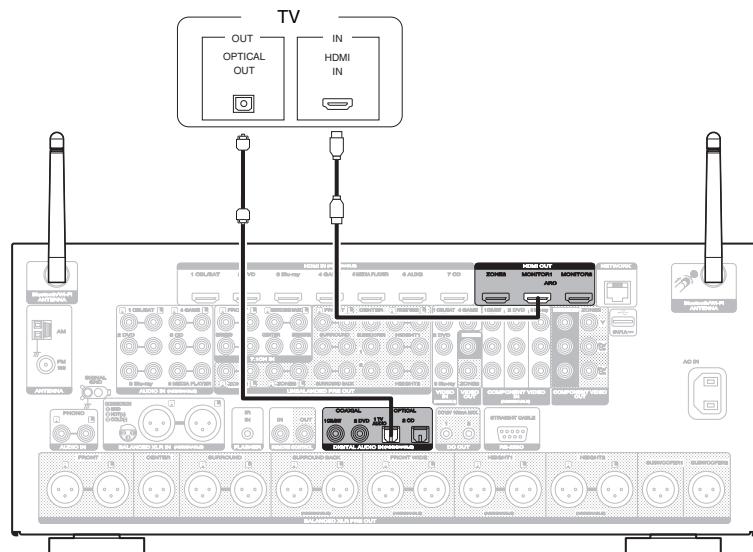


When using the HDMI control function, connect to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector.

## **Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)**

Use an HDMI cable to connect the TV to this unit.

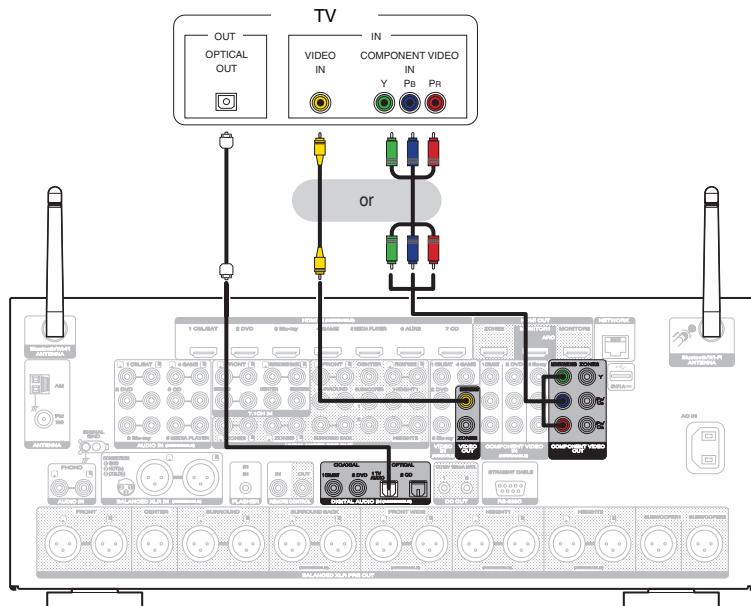
To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.



## Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector

Use a component video or a video cable to connect the TV to this unit.

To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.



## Connecting a playback device

This unit is equipped with three types of video input connectors (HDMI, component video and composite video) and three types of audio input connectors (HDMI, digital audio and audio).

Select input connectors on this unit according to the connectors equipped on the device you want to connect.

If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections.

In the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” ( p. 69)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” ( p. 70)
- “Connecting a video camcorder or game console” ( p. 71)
- “Connecting a turntable” ( p. 72)
- “Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector” ( p. 73)



- Connect devices to this unit as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit.
- The source that is assigned to the HDMI IN, DIGITAL AUDIO IN, COMPONENT VIDEO IN, VIDEO IN and AUDIO IN connectors can be changed. See “Input Assign” on how to change the input source assigned to the input connectors. ( p. 218)
- To play back audio signals that are input to this unit on a TV connected via HDMI, set in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” to “TV”. ( p. 207)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.

## □ Connecting the balanced XLR IN terminal

This unit is equipped with BALANCED XLR IN terminals. Use these terminals if your device has an XLR terminal as an audio output terminal.

When using BALANCED XLR IN terminals, assign “XLR” for “Input Assign” – “ANALOG”. (☞ p. 219) By default, these terminals are disabled.

[ AV8802 BALANCED XLR IN terminal PIN arrangement ]

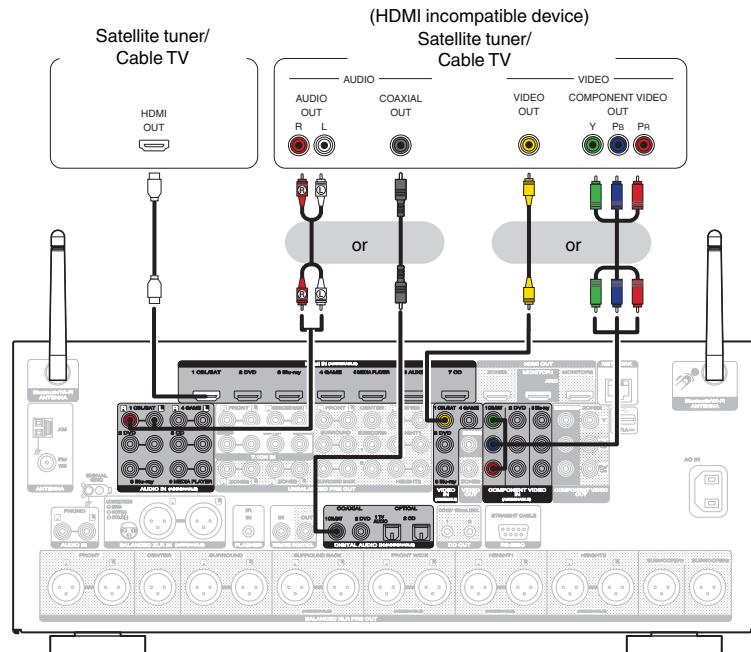


- (①) GND (Ground)
- (②) HOT (+)
- (③) COLD (-)

## Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

This explanation uses the connection with a satellite tuner/cable TV STB as an example.

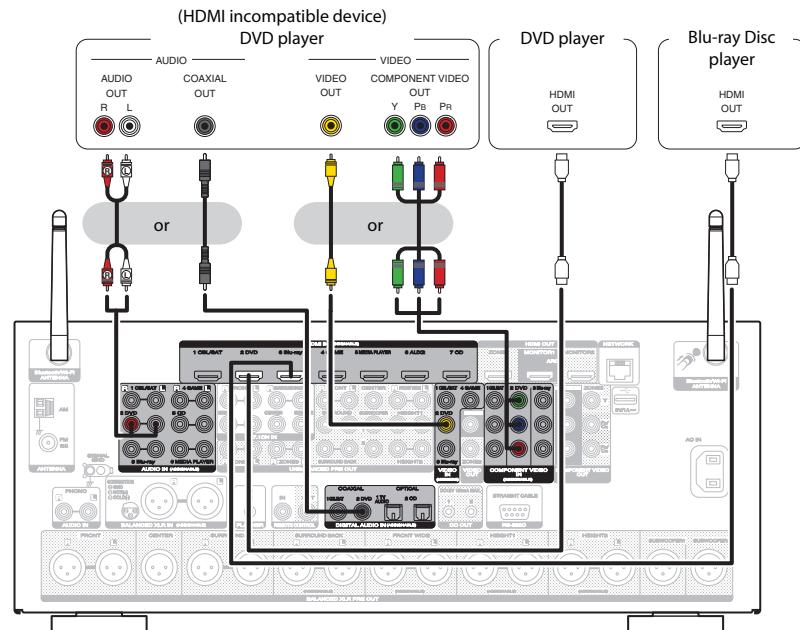
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



## Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player

This explanation uses the connection with a DVD player or Blu-ray disc player as an example.

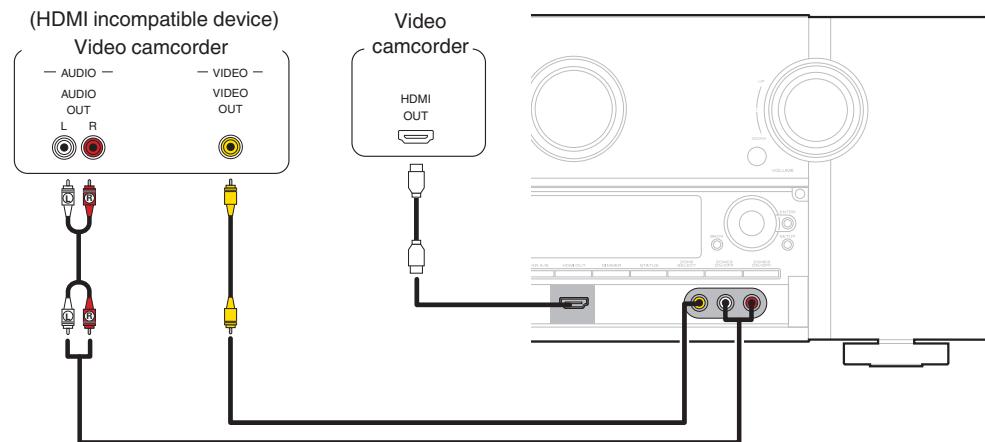
Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



## Connecting a video camcorder or game console

This explanation uses the connection with a video camcorders as an example.

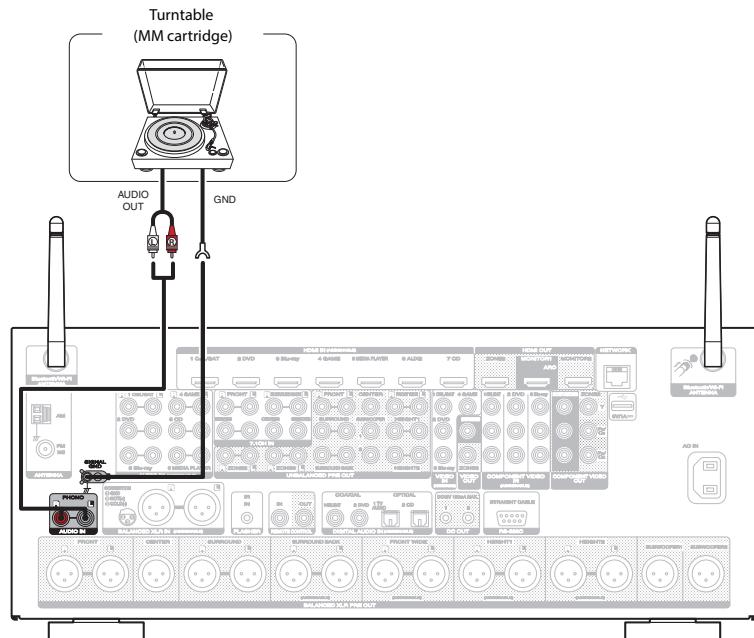
Connect a playback device to this unit, such as a video camcorder or game console.



## Connecting a turntable

This unit is compatible with turntables equipped with a moving magnet (MM) phono cartridge. When you connect to a turntable with a low output moving coil (MC) cartridge, use a commercially available MC head amp or a step-up transformer.

If you set this unit's input source to "Phono" and you accidentally increase the volume without having a turntable connected, you may hear a hum noise from the speakers.



### NOTE

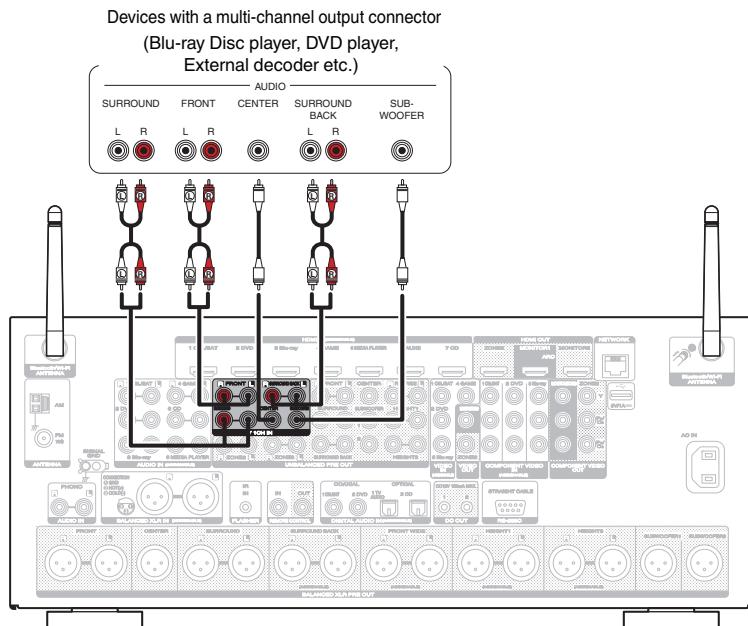
The earth terminal (SIGNAL GND) of this unit is not for safety grounding purposes. If this terminal is connected when there is a lot of noise, the noise can be reduced. Note that depending on the turntable, connecting the ground line may have the reverse effect of increasing noise. In this case, it is not necessary to connect the ground line.



## Connecting a device with a multi-channel output connector

You can connect this unit to an external device fitted with multi-channel sound audio output connectors to enjoy music and video.

To play analog signals input from 7.1CH IN connectors, set “Input Mode” ([p. 221](#)) to “7.1CH IN”.



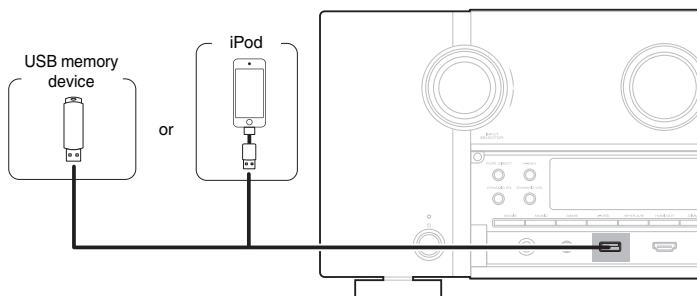
The video signal can be connected in the same way as a Blu-ray Disc player/DVD player. “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” ([p. 70](#))

## Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port

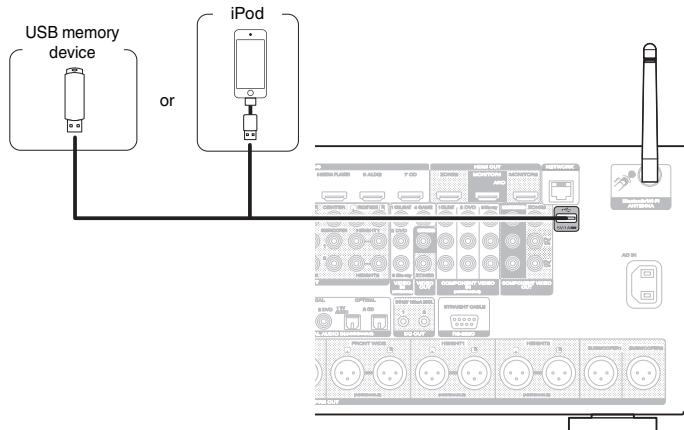
To connect an iPod to this unit, use the USB adapter cable that was supplied with the iPod.

For operating instructions see "Playing an iPod" (☞ p. 88) or "Playing a USB memory device" (☞ p. 93).

【Front panel】



【Rear panel】



Marantz does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB hard disk drive (HDD) which came with an AC adapter, use that device's supplied AC adapter.

**NOTE**

- You cannot use the USB ports on the front panel and rear panel simultaneously. Select and connect the USB port to use. ( p. 91)
- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit's USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.



## ■ Supported iPod/iPhone models

### • iPod classic



iPod classic  
80GB



iPod classic  
160GB (2007)



iPod classic  
160GB (2009)

### • iPod nano



iPod nano  
3rd generation  
(video)  
4GB 8GB



iPod nano  
4th generation (video)  
8GB 16GB



iPod nano  
5th generation (video camera)  
8GB 16GB



iPod nano  
6th generation  
8GB 16GB



iPod nano  
7th generation  
16GB

### • iPod touch



iPod touch  
2nd generation  
8GB 16GB 32GB



iPod touch  
3rd generation  
32GB 64GB



iPod touch  
4th generation  
8GB 16GB 32GB 64GB



iPod touch  
5th generation  
16GB 32GB 64GB

### • iPhone



iPhone 3G  
8GB 16GB



iPhone 3GS  
8GB 16GB 32GB



iPhone 4  
8GB 16GB 32GB



iPhone 4S  
16GB 32GB 64GB



iPhone 5  
iPhone 5c iPhone 5s  
16GB 32GB 64GB

# Connecting an HD Radio receiver

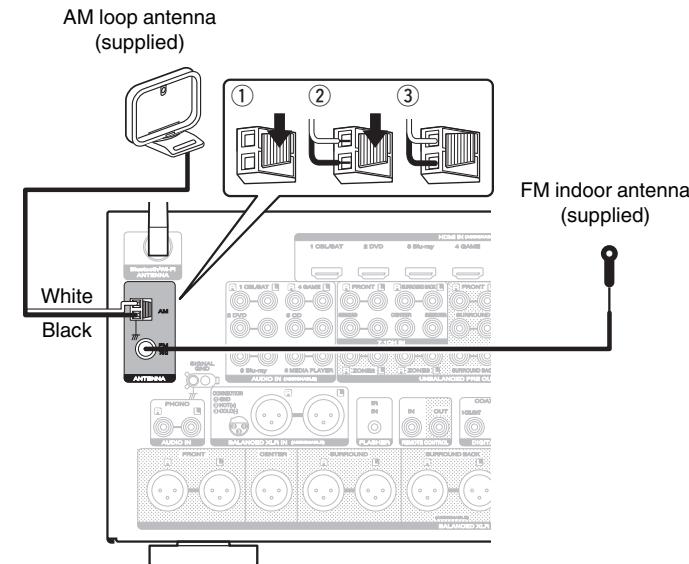
After connecting the antenna and receiving a broadcast signal, fix the antenna with tape in a position where the noise level becomes minimal.  
("Listening to an HD Radio™ stations" (☞ p. 101))



If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

## NOTE

- Do not connect two FM antennas simultaneously.
- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.



## ■ Using the AM loop antenna

### Suspending on a wall

Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.

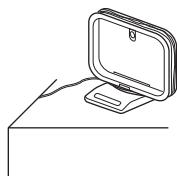


Nail, tack, etc.

### Standing alone

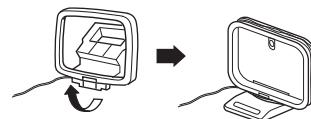
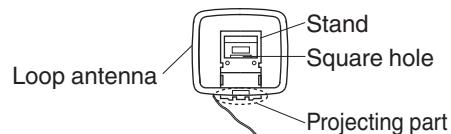
Use the procedure shown above to assemble.

When assembling, refer to "AM loop antenna assembly".



## ■ AM loop antenna assembly

- 1 Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.
- 2 Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.



# Connecting to a home network (LAN)

This unit can connect to a network using a wired LAN or wireless LAN.

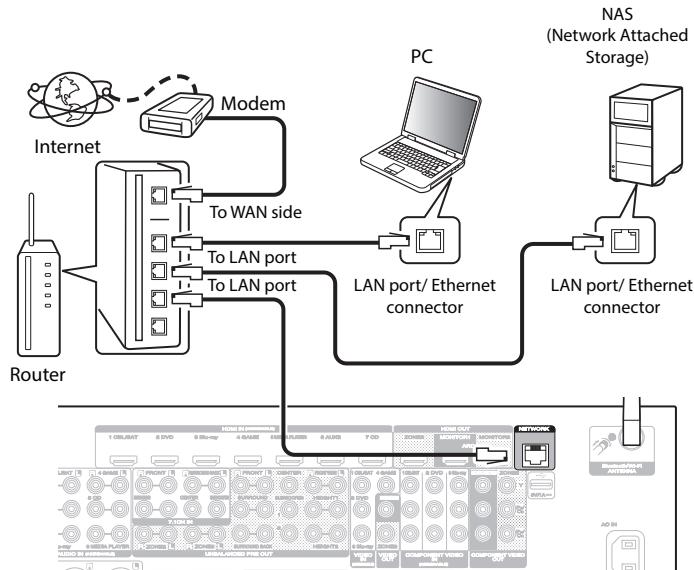
You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to enable various types of playback and operations as described below.

- Playback of network audio such as Internet Radio and from your media server(s)
- Playback of music content from online streaming services
- Using the Apple AirPlay function
- Operation on this unit via the network
- Firmware Update

**For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.**

## Wired LAN

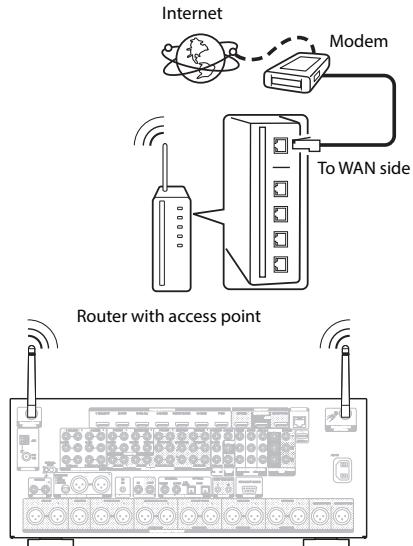
To make connections via wired LAN, use a LAN cable to connect the router to this unit as shown in the figure below.



## Wireless LAN

When connecting to the network via wireless LAN, connect the external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity connection to the rear panel and stand them upright.

See "Wi-Fi Setup" (☞ p. 258) on how to connect to a wireless LAN router.



- When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:
  - Built-in DHCP server  
This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.
  - Built-in 100BASE-TX switch  
When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.
- Only use a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable (readily available at electronics stores). (CAT-5 or greater recommended)
- The normal shielded-type LAN cable is recommended.  
If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.
- When using a router that supports the WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) function, Wi-Fi connection can be carried out easily.
- When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, configure the IP address, etc. in "Network". (☞ p. 257)

### NOTE

- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact your ISP or a computer shop for details.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE compatible router is required if your contracted line is not set using PPPoE.
- Do not connect a NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port / Ethernet connector on your computer.
- Various online services may be discontinued without prior notice.

# Connecting an external control device

## REMOTE CONTROL jacks

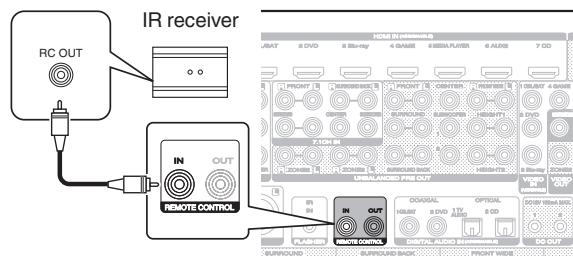
### ■ Performing operations by RC on this unit without visual contact

You can connect an external IR receiver to the REMOTE CONTROL connectors to perform operations on this unit with the supplied remote control unit without visual contact. This might be necessary if the unit is hidden in a cupboard or corner, so you can't directly point with the remote control unit to the device.

To do this, disable the remote control signal receiving function ("Remote lock function" (☞ p. 176)).

#### NOTE

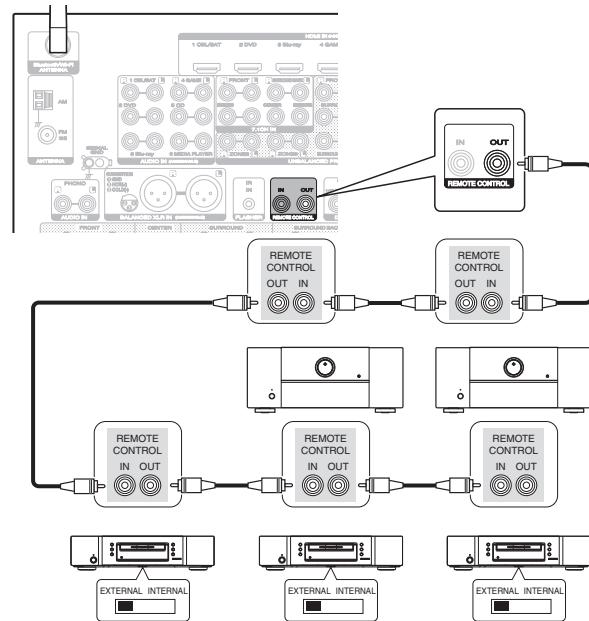
When the remote control signal receiving function is disabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.



## ■ Remotely connecting Marantz devices

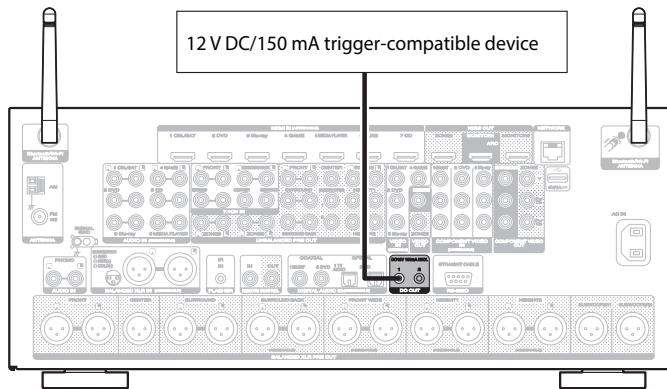
When you are using a Marantz device other than this unit that supports remote connection, you can transmit remote control signals just by connecting the device to the REMOTE CONTROL IN/OUT connector with a monaural cable.

Set the remote control switch located on the rear panel of the connected audio component to “EXTERNAL” or “EXT.” to use this feature.



## DC OUT jacks

When a device with DC IN jack is connected, the connected device's power on/standby can be controlled through linked operation to this unit. The DC OUT jack outputs a maximum 12 V DC /150 mA electrical signal.



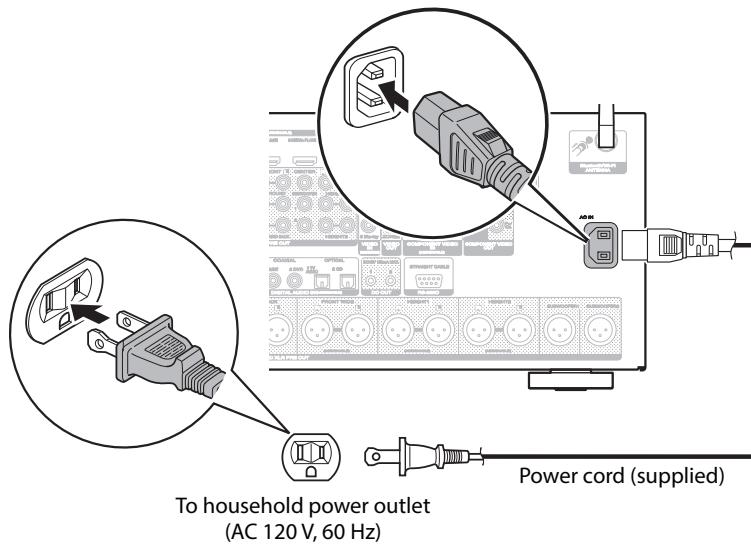
NOTE

- Use a monaural mini-plug cable for connecting the DC OUT jack. Do not use a stereo mini-plug cable.
  - If the permissible trigger input level for the connected device is larger than 12 V DC/150 mA, or has shorted, the DC OUT jack cannot be used. In this case, turn off the power to the unit, and disconnect DC OUT jack.



## Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.



## ■ Contents

### Basic operation

Turning the power on	86
Selecting the input source	86
Adjusting the volume	87
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)	87
Selecting a sound mode	149

### Playback a device

Playing a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player	87
Playing an iPod	88
Playing a USB memory device	93
Playing a Bluetooth device	98
Listening to an HD Radio™ station	101

### Playback network audio/service

Listening to Internet Radio	112
Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS	116
Viewing photographs on the Flickr site	120
Listening to Pandora®	124
Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio	131
AirPlay function	134
Spotify Connect function	137

### Convenience functions

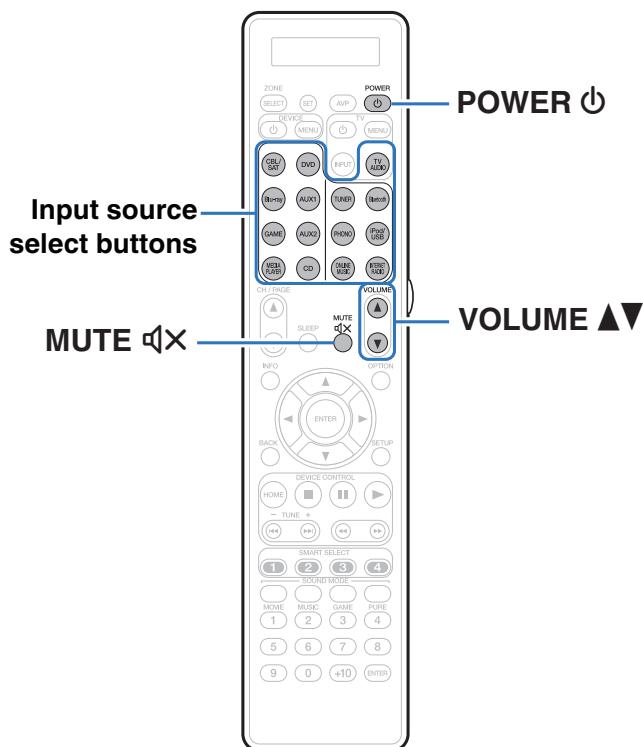
Convenience functions	138
HDMI control function	166
Sleep timer function	167
Smart select function	169
Panel lock function	174
Remote lock function	176
Switches light illumination on/off	177

### Other functions

Web control function	172
Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room)	178



## Basic operation



### Turning the power on

1 Press POWER  $\oplus$  to turn on power to the unit.



- You can press the input source select button when the unit is in standby mode to turn on the power.
- You can also switch the power to standby by pressing  $\ominus$  on the main unit.

### Selecting the input source

1 Press the input source select button to be played back.

The desired input source can be selected directly.



You can also select the input source by turning INPUT SELECTOR on the main unit.

## Adjusting the volume

### 1 Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.



- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.
- You can also adjust the master volume by turning VOLUME on the main unit.

## Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)

### 1 Press MUTE ✕.

- “MUTE” appears on the display.
- ✕ appears on the TV screen.



- The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” in the menu. ( p. 197)
- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE ✕ again.

## Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player

The following describes the procedure for playing DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
- ② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.

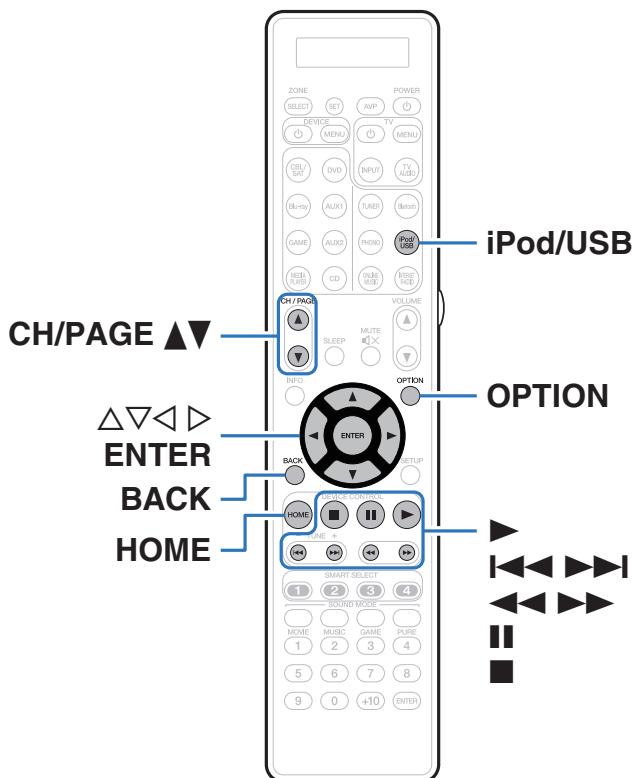
### 2 Press POWER ⏻ to turn on power to the unit.

### 3 Press DVD or Blu-ray to switch an input source for a player used for playback.

### 4 Play the DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player.

### ■ Surround playback ( p. 149)

## Playing an iPod



- You can use the USB cable provided with the iPod to connect the iPod with the unit's USB port and enjoy music stored on the iPod.
  - For information on the iPod models that can be played back with this unit, see "Supported iPod/iPhone models" (☞ p. 76).
  - See "AirPlay function" (☞ p. 134) on how to play a music file saved on an iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes on this unit via the network.

## Listening to music on an iPod

- 1 Connect the iPod to the USB port. (☞ p. 74)**
- 2 Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to “iPod/USB”.**
  - Select the USB port to be used. (☞ p. 91)  
The USB port on the front panel can be used by default.
  - “Browse from iPod” is displayed on the display of this unit.
  - Nothing is displayed on the TV screen.
- 3 Operate iPod itself while seeing the iPod screen to play back music.**



- “iPod Browse Mode” has two modes, “From iPod” and “On-Screen”. By default, “From iPod”, where you operate the iPod itself while looking at the iPod screen, is set.
- To change to “On-Screen”, where you perform operations while having the iPod information displayed on the TV screen, see “iPod Browse Mode settings” (☞ p. 90).

### NOTE

- Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
- Note that Marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.

### ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

This can be operated when the “iPod Browse Mode” (☞ p. 90) is set to “From iPod”.

- “Setting the USB port to use (USB Select)” (☞ p. 91)
- “iPod Browse Mode settings” (☞ p. 90)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 145)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 146)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 147)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 148)



## iPod Browse Mode settings

In this mode, various lists and screens during playback on the iPod are displayed on the TV screen.

This section describes the steps up to playing back tracks on the iPod in "On-Screen".

**1 Press OPTION when the input source is "iPod/USB".**

The option menu screen is displayed.

**2 Select "iPod Browse Mode", then press ENTER.**

The "iPod Browse Mode" screen is displayed.

**3 Use <|> to select "On-Screen", then press ENTER.**

- Operations available for "On-Screen" and "From iPod" are listed below.

iPod Browse Mode		From iPod	On-Screen
Playable files	Music file	✓	✓
	Video file	*	
Active buttons	Remote control unit (This unit)	✓	✓
	iPod	✓	

\* Only the sound is played.

**4 Use  $\Delta\triangleright$  to select the file to be played, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
⏸	Pause
⏹	Stop
◀◀▶▶	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀▶▶	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
$\Delta\triangledown$	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen

- The actions of the operation buttons may differ.



- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title etc. each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed during playback with "iPod Browse Mode" set to "On-Screen".
- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as "." (period).

## Operations accessible through the option menu

This can be operated when the “iPod Browse Mode” is set to “On-Screen”. (☞ p. 90)

- “Setting the USB port to use (USB Select)” (☞ p. 91)
- “iPod Browse Mode settings” (☞ p. 90)
- “Performing repeat playback” (☞ p. 92)
- “Performing random playback” (☞ p. 92)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 145)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 146)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 148)

## Setting the USB port to use (USB Select)

### □ Supported input sources: iPod/USB

#### 1 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 2 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “USB Select”, then press ENTER.

#### 3 Use $\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleright$ to select the USB port to use.

---

Front (Default):	Uses the USB port on the front panel.
---------------------	---------------------------------------

Rear:	Uses the USB port on the rear panel.
-------	--------------------------------------

---

#### 4 Press ENTER.

The display returns to the playback screen.



## Performing repeat playback

- 1** Press OPTION with “iPod Browse Mode” set to “On-Screen”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

- 2** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Repeat”, then press ENTER.
- 3** Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select repeat playback mode.

Off (Default) :	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
One:	A file being played is played repeatedly.
All:	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.

- 4** Press ENTER.

The display returns to the playback screen.



“Repeat” settings are stored for each input source.

## Performing random playback

- 1** Press OPTION with “iPod Browse Mode” set to “On-Screen”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

- 2** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Random”, then press ENTER.
- 3** Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select random playback mode.

Off (Default):	Disable random playback.
On:	Randomly play back all tracks in the current playback folder.

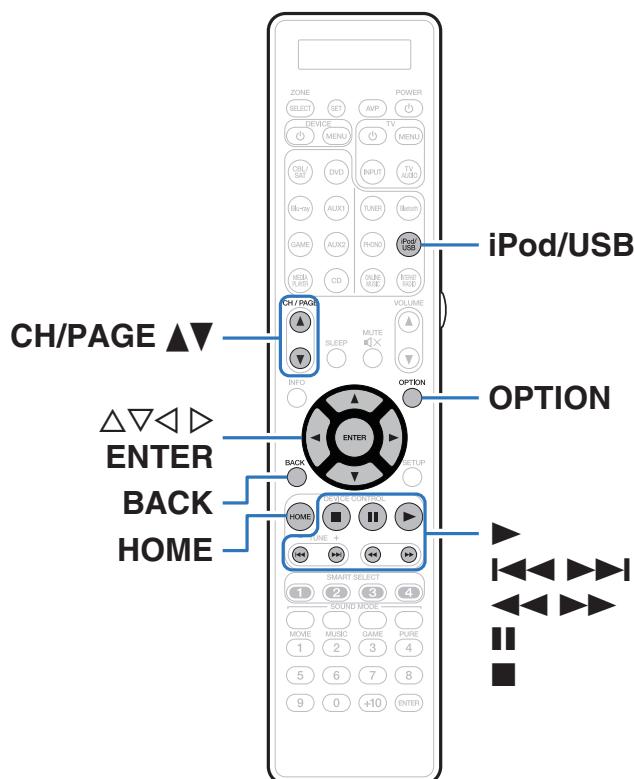
- 4** Press ENTER.

The display returns to the playback screen.



- During random playback, each time playback of a track is completed, another track is randomly selected for playback from tracks in the folder. Therefore, it's possible that you may hear a track played back more than once during random playback.
- “Random” settings are stored for each input source.

# Playing a USB memory device



- Playing back music or viewing still picture (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device.
- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in “FAT16” or “FAT32” format.
- The audio/video format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.  
See “Playback a USB memory device” for details. ([p. 314](#))

- WMA
- MP3
- WAV
- MPEG-4 AAC
- FLAC
- ALAC
- AIFF
- DSD
- JPEG

## Playing files stored on USB memory devices

- 1** Connect the USB memory device to the USB port.  
(☞ p. 74)
- 2** Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to “iPod/USB”.



Select the USB port to be used. (☞ p. 91) The USB port on the front panel can be used by default.

- 3** Use  $\Delta\triangleright$  to select the file to be played, then press ENTER.

Playback starts.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
⏸	Pause
⏹	Stop
◀◀▶▶	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀▶▶ (Press and hold)	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
△▽	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen



- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.
- This unit plays back picture (JPEG) files in the order in which they are stored in the folder.

### NOTE

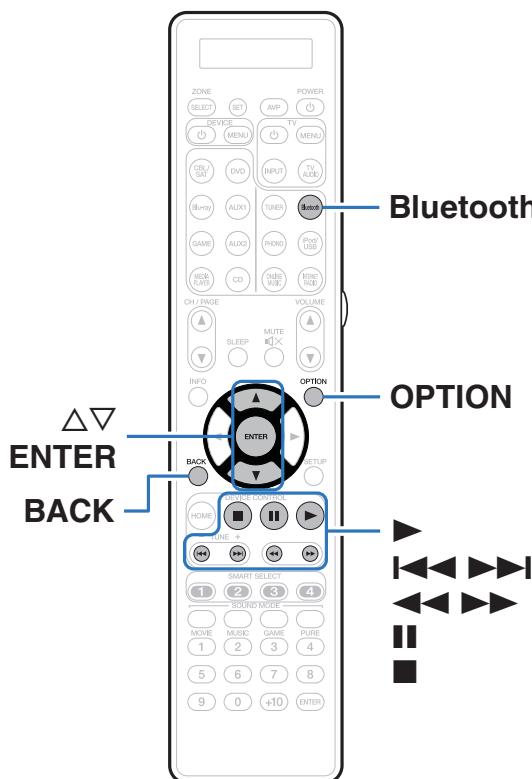
Note that Marantz will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.

## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Setting the USB port to use (USB Select)” ( p. 91)
- “Performing repeat playback” ( p. 139)
- “Performing random playback” ( p. 139)
- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” ( p. 141)
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” ( p. 142)
- “Setting the Slideshow Interval” ( p. 143)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” ( p. 143)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” ( p. 144)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ( p. 145)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ( p. 146)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” ( p. 147)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ( p. 148)



# Listening to music on a Bluetooth device



Music files stored on Bluetooth devices such as smartphones, digital music players, etc. can be enjoyed on this unit by pairing and connecting this unit with the Bluetooth device.

Communication is possible up to a range of about 32.8 ft/10 m.

## NOTE

To play back music from a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth device needs to support the A2DP profile.

## Pairing with a Bluetooth device

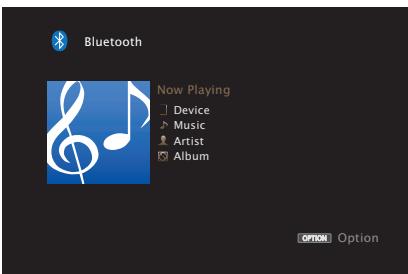
In order to enjoy music from a Bluetooth device on this unit, the Bluetooth device must first be paired with this unit.

Once the Bluetooth device has been paired, it does not need to be paired again.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Connect the supplied external antennas for Bluetooth/wireless connectivity to the Bluetooth/wireless LAN antenna connectors on the rear panel. (☞ p. 29)
- ② Press POWER ⏪ to turn on power to the unit.

### 2 Press Bluetooth to switch the input source to "Bluetooth".



When using for the first time, the unit will go into the pairing mode automatically and "Pairing..." will appear on the display of the unit.

### 3 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

At the end of the pairing, the device name appears on the display of this unit.

- Connect to the Bluetooth device while "Pairing" is being displayed on the display of the unit.  
Perform the connection with the Bluetooth device close to the unit (about 3.3 ft/1 m).



- When connecting a second Bluetooth device, press and hold Bluetooth for approximately 3 seconds or select "Pairing Mode" from the options menu to pair the device. (☞ p. 100)
- This unit can be paired with a maximum of 8 Bluetooth devices. When a 9th Bluetooth device is paired, it will be registered in place of the oldest registered device.
- When a number appears on the display of this unit, check that it is the same number as that shown on the screen of the Bluetooth device and then select "Pair" for both the Bluetooth device and the unit.
- Enter "0000" when the password is requested on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

## Playing a Bluetooth device

Check the following before you play back music.

- The Bluetooth function of the Bluetooth device must be turned on
- Pairing must be completed

### **1 Press Bluetooth to switch the input source to “Bluetooth”.**

The unit will automatically connect to the most recently used Bluetooth device.

### **2 Start playing the Bluetooth device.**

- The Bluetooth device can also be operated with the remote control of this unit.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
⏸	Pause
⏹	Stop
◀◀▶▶	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀▶▶	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
△▽	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward



- When the power of this unit is turned on, the input source will be automatically switched to “Bluetooth” if a Bluetooth device is connected.
- When the “IP Control” setting of this unit is set to “Always On” and a Bluetooth device is connected with the unit in the standby state, the power of the unit will be turned on automatically. (☞ p. 261)
- Press STATUS on this unit during playback to switch the display between Title name, Artist name, Album name, etc.
- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as “.” (period).

**NOTE**

- To operate the Bluetooth device with the remote control of this unit, the Bluetooth device needs to support the AVRCP profile.
- The remote control of this unit is not guaranteed to work with all Bluetooth devices.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth device, this unit outputs audio that is coupled to the volume setting on the Bluetooth device.

## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Pairing with the Pairing Mode” ( p. 100)
- “Performing repeat playback” ( p. 139)
- “Performing random playback” ( p. 139)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” ( p. 143)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” ( p. 144)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ( p. 145)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ( p. 146)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ( p. 148)



## Pairing with the Pairing Mode

Pair a Bluetooth device with this unit.

**1 Press OPTION when the input source is “Bluetooth”.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

**2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Pairing Mode”, then press ENTER.**

The device will go into the pairing mode.

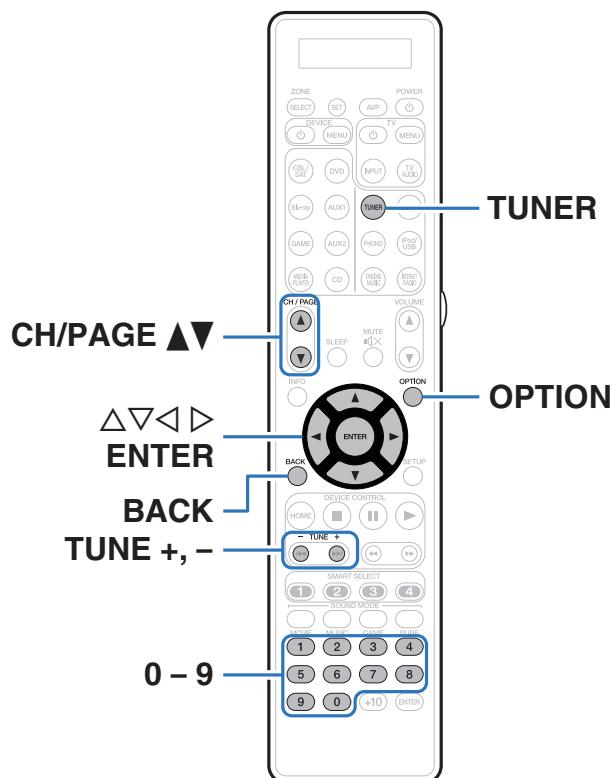
**3 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.**

At the end of the pairing, the device name appears on the display of this unit.



- When a number appears on the display of this unit, check that it is the same number as that shown on the screen of the Bluetooth device and then select “Pair” for both the Bluetooth device and the unit.
- Enter “0000” when the password is requested on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

# Listening to an HD Radio™ stations



- HD Radio stations offer higher sound quality than conventional FM/AM broadcasts. It is also possible to receive data services and select broadcasts from among up to eight multicast programs.
- HD Radio Technology provides higher quality sound than conventional broadcasts and allows reception of data services.

## Digital Sound

Digital, CD-quality sound. HD Radio Technology enables local radio stations to broadcast a clean digital signal. AM sounds like today's FM and FM sounds like a CD.

## PSD

Program Service Data: Contributes to the superior user experience of HD Radio Technology. Presents song name, artist, station IDs, and other relevant data streams.

## HD2/HD3

Adjacent to traditional main stations are extra local FM channels. These HD2/HD3 Channels provide new, original music as well as deep cuts into traditional genre.





This HD Radio receiver enables:

PSD

HD2/HD3

Digital Sound

- HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and “Arc” logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

For detailed information on HD Radio Technology, please go to  
[“www.hdradio.com/”](http://www.hdradio.com/)

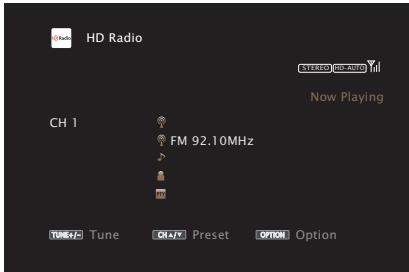
- For antenna connections, see “Connecting an HD Radio receiver” (☞ p. 77).



## Listening to an HD Radio broadcast

- 1 Connect the antenna. “Connecting an HD Radio receiver” (☞ p. 77)
- 2 Press TUNER to switch the input source to “HD Radio”.

[ TV screen ]



[ Display of this unit ]

01 FM  
92.10MHz

- 3 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

- 4 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “FM/AM”, then press ENTER.

This displays the reception band input screen.

- 5 Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select “FM” or “AM”, then press ENTER.

**FM:** When listening to an FM broadcast.

**AM:** When listening to an AM broadcast.

- 6 Press TUNE + or TUNE - to select the station you want listen to.

Scanning is performed until it finds an available radio station. When it finds a radio station, it stops the scan automatically and tunes in.



The modes for receiving FM broadcasts consists of “Auto” mode that automatically searches available broadcast stations and “Manual” mode that lets you tune in using buttons to change the frequency. The default setting is “Auto”. You can also use “Direct Tune” to tune in by entering the frequency directly.

In “Auto” mode, you cannot tune in to radio stations if the reception is not good. If this is the case, then use the “Manual” mode or “Direct Tune” mode to tune in.

Operation buttons	Function
TUNE +, -	Selects the radio station (up/down)
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Selects preset radio stations
0 – 9	Preset channel selection / Direct frequency tuning

## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)” (☞ p. 105)
- “Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)” (☞ p. 105)
- “Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)” (☞ p. 106)
- “Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)” (☞ p. 107)
- “Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)” (☞ p. 108)
- “Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)” (☞ p. 109)
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” (☞ p. 143)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 144)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (☞ p. 145)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 146)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (☞ p. 148)



## Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)

You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “HD Radio”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Direct Tune”, then press ENTER.**  
The screen that lets you enter the frequency is displayed.
- 3 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  or 0 – 9 to select a number and press  $\triangleright$ .**
  - If  $\triangleleft$  is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.
- 4 Repeat step 3 and enter the frequency of the radio station you want to hear.**
- 5 When setting is completed, press ENTER.**  
The preset frequency is tuned in.

## Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)

You can change the mode for tuning into FM and AM broadcasts. If you cannot tune in automatically with “Auto” mode, change the mode to “Manual” and tune in manually.

- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “HD Radio”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Tune Mode”, then press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select the tune mode, then press ENTER.**

<b>Auto:</b>	Automatically search for and tune to a receivable radio station.
<b>HD-Auto :</b>	Automatically tune to the HD Radio station.
<b>Analog-Auto:</b>	Automatically tune to an analog station and analog HD Radio station.
<b>Manual:</b>	Manually change the frequency one step at a time each time the button is pressed.
<b>Analog-Manual:</b>	Manually tune to an analog station and analog HD Radio station.



## Selecting an audio program

- 1 Select the tuning mode (“HD-Auto”, “Auto” or “Manual”).**
- 2 Press TUNE + or TUNE – to tune in the desired Multicast channel.**
  - If the station you are tuning in has multiple audio programs, “HD1” is indicated on the display.  
If it only has one audio program, “HD” is indicated.
  - When the unit receives multicast channels, the multicast program number (HD2) is displayed to the right of the station name.



- This function is not available for AM HD Radio stations because they cannot broadcast multicast channels.
- If digital audio data cannot be received after the station is selected, or if the station signal is weak, the unit may not be able to receive the multicast channels.
- If the station signal is weak, the digital audio of the multicast channel may cut out.

## Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset Memory)

A maximum of 56 radio stations can be automatically preset.

- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “HD Radio”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Auto Preset Memory”, then press ENTER.**
- 3 Press ENTER.**  
The unit starts to tune in to radio stations automatically and preset them.
  - When presetting is completed, “Completed” is displayed for about 5 seconds and the option menu screen turns off.



The preset memory is overwritten.

## Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)

Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily.

Up to 56 stations can be preset.

- 1 Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset.  
("Listening to an HD Radio broadcast" (☞ p. 103))**
- 2 Press OPTION.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 3 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select "Preset Memory", then press ENTER.**  
The list of already preset channels is displayed.
- 4 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  or 0 – 9 to select the channel you want to preset, then press ENTER.**  
The current broadcast station that is preset.
  - To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

Channel	Default settings
1 – 8	92.10 / 92.30 / 92.50 / 92.70 / 93.10 / 93.50 / 93.70 / 94.10 MHz
9 – 16	94.30 / 94.50 / 94.70 / 94.90 / 95.10 / 95.30 / 95.50 / 95.70 MHz
17 – 24	98.10 / 98.30 / 98.50 / 98.70 / 98.90 / 99.10 / 100.10 / 100.30 MHz
25 – 32	100.50 / 100.70 / 100.90 / 101.10 / 101.30 / 101.50 / 101.70 / 101.90 MHz
33 – 40	103.10 / 103.30 / 103.50 / 103.70 / 103.90 / 104.10 / 104.30 / 104.50 MHz
41 – 48	104.70 / 104.90 / 105.10 / 105.30 / 105.50 / 105.70 / 105.90 / 106.10 MHz
49 – 56	106.30 / 106.50 / 106.70 / 106.90 / 107.10 / 107.30 / 107.50 / 107.90 MHz

## Listening to preset stations

- 1 Use CH/PAGE  $\blacktriangle\triangledown$  or 0 – 9 to select the desired preset channel.**



## Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)

You can set the name to the preset broadcast station or change it.  
Up to eight characters can be input.

- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “HD Radio”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Preset Name”, then press ENTER.**  
The Preset Name screen is displayed.
- 3 Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select the group of the broadcast station you want to name.**
- 4 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the broadcast station you want to name, then press ENTER.**

- 5 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select a name label, then press ENTER.**

The screen that lets you edit the Preset Name is displayed.

- If you select “Set Defaults”, then the unit returns to displaying the frequency.

- 6 Enter the characters, then press “OK”.**

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” ( p. 188).

- 7 Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.**



## Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)

Perform auto preset memory to save all the broadcasting stations that can be received in the memory. Selecting a broadcast station becomes easier by skipping unnecessary memories.

### 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “HD Radio”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “Preset Skip”, then press ENTER.

The “Preset Skip” screen is displayed.

### 3 To set the stations you want to skip by groups

① Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.

② Press  $\Delta$  to select “Set No.\* – \* to Skip”, then press ENTER.

Skip all the broadcast stations that are included in the selected group “\*-\*”.

(\* is the selected group number.)

### To set the stations you want to skip by stations

① Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.

② Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the broadcast station you want to skip.

③ Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select “Skip”.

The station you selected is not displayed.

### 4 Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.



## Cancelling Preset Skip

- 1** Use  $\triangle\triangleright$  to select a group containing a broadcast station to cancel the skip for while the “Preset Skip” screen is displayed.
- 2** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.
- 3** Use  $\triangle\triangleright$  to select “On”.  
The skip is cancelled.

**NOTE**

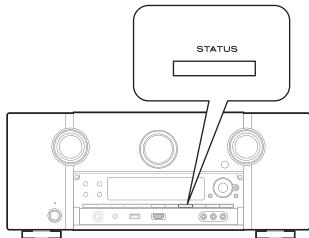
Preset skip cannot be cancelled for groups.



## Checking the HD Radio reception information

### 1 Press STATUS on the main unit while an HD Radio broadcast is being received.

The current reception information is shown on the display.



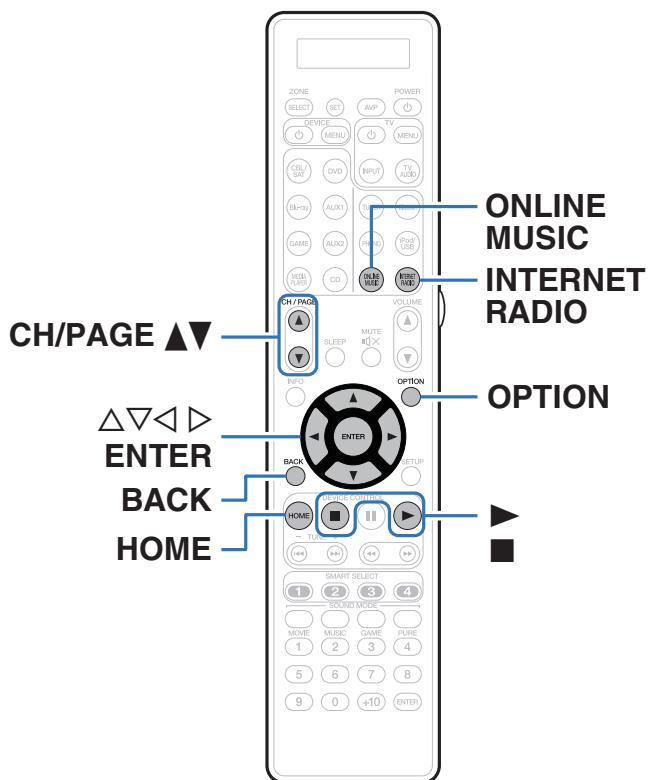
1. Normal  
↓
2. Frequency / Signal strength  
↓
3. Long Station name / Program and Program type  
↓
4. Title name / Artist name  
↓
5. Album name / Genre name



If the station signal weakens while receiving a digital broadcast (while “HD” and text is displayed), the mode automatically switches to the analog reception mode (the reception frequency is displayed).

Because of this, the “HD” and text may flicker if the station signal level is weak and unstable.

# Listening to Internet Radio



- Internet Radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet Radio stations from around the world can be received.
- The Internet radio station list on this unit the database service provided by vTuner radio station.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.

See "Playing an Internet Radio Station" (☞ p. 317) for details.

- WMA
- MP3
- MPEG-4 AAC



## Listening to Internet Radio

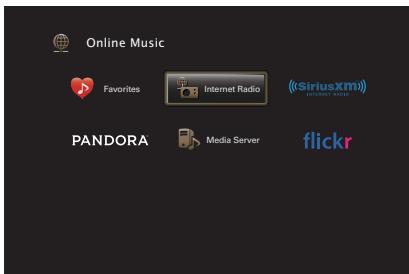
### 1 Prepare for playback.

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 79))

### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

- You can also press INTERNET RADIO to select the input source "Internet Radio" directly.

### 3 Use $\Delta\triangledown\leftarrow\rightarrow$ to select "Internet Radio", then press ENTER.



### 4 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select the search method for the radio station that you wish to playback and then press ENTER.

Name of country:	Select the various regions. Displays typical Internet Radio stations.
Search Stations :	Displays all Internet Radio stations that this unit can tune in to.
Search Podcasts :	Displays Internet Radio stations in the podcasts that this unit can tune in to.
Recommended Stations :	Displays recommended Internet Radio stations.
radiomarantz.com :	Displays Internet Radio stations added to favorites in vTuner. For instructions on how to add to favorites in vTuner, see "Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites" (☞ p. 115).
Recently Played :	Displays recently played Internet Radio stations. Up to 20 stations can be stored in "Recently Played".
Search by Keyword :	Displays Internet Radio stations searched by keyword. For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (☞ p. 188).

## 5 Use $\Delta\triangleright\triangleright$ to select the station, then press ENTER.

Playback starts once buffering reaches “100%”.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
■	Stop
ENTER	(Press and hold) Stop
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen



- The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.
- Any characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with “.” (period).

### NOTE

The radio station database service may be suspended or be otherwise unavailable without notice.

## Playing the last played Internet Radio station

### 1 Press INTERNET RADIO.

The source switches to “Internet Radio” and the last played radio station plays.

### Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” ([p. 141](#))
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” ([p. 142](#))
- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” ([p. 143](#))
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” ([p. 144](#))
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ([p. 145](#))
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ([p. 146](#))
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ([p. 148](#))

## Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites

There are many Internet Radio stations in the world, and this unit can tune into these stations. But finding the radio station you want to hear may be difficult, because there are too many stations. If this is the case, then please use vTuner, an Internet Radio station search website specifically designed for this unit. You can use your PC to search Internet Radio stations and add them as your favorites. This unit can play radio stations added to vTuner.

### 1 Check the MAC address of this unit. ("Information" (☞ p. 257))

- The MAC address is necessary when you create an account for vTuner.

### 2 Use your PC to access the vTuner website (<http://www.radiomarantz.com>).

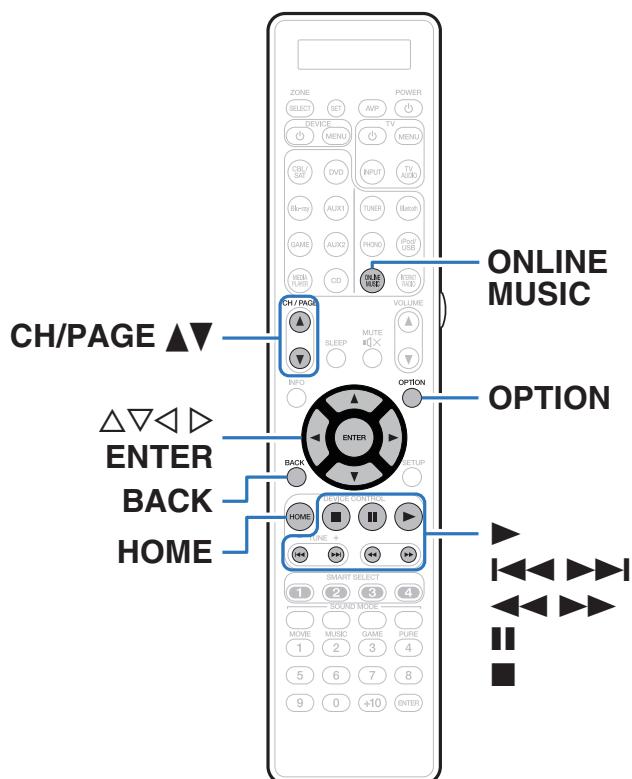
### 3 Enter the MAC address of this unit, then click "Go".

- Enter your E-mail address and a password of your choice.
- Select the search criteria (genre, region, language, etc.) of your choice.
  - You can also enter a keyword to search for a station you want to hear.
- Select the radio station of your choice from the list, and then click the Add to Favorites icon.
- Enter the name of the favorite group, then click "Go".  
A new favorite group that includes the selected radio station is created.
  - Internet Radio stations added to favorites in vTuner can be played from "radiomarantz.com" (☞ p. 113) with this unit.



You can also add a radio station that is not in the vTuner list.

# Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS



- This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) stored on a PC and on Network Attached Storage (NAS) that supports DLNA.

- The network audio playback function of this unit connects to the server using technologies shown below.

Windows Media Player Network Sharing Service

- The audio/video format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.

For details, see "Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS" (☞ p. 316).

- WMA
- MP3
- WAV
- MPEG-4 AAC
- FLAC
- ALAC
- AIFF
- DSD
- JPEG

## Applying media sharing settings

Here, we apply the settings to share music files stored on a PC and NAS on the network.

If you are using a Media Server, be sure to apply this setting first.

### ■ When using Windows Media Player 12 (Windows 7 / Windows 8)

- 1** Start up Windows Media Player 12 on the PC.
- 2** Select “More streaming options...” in the “Stream”.
- 3** Select “Allowed” in the “Marantz AV8802” drop-down list.
- 4** Select “Allowed” in the drop-down list for “Media programs on this PC and remote connections...”.
- 5** Follow the screen instructions to end the setting.

### ■ When using Windows Media Player 11

- 1** Start up Windows Media Player 11 on the PC.
- 2** Select “Media Sharing” in the “Library”.
- 3** Click the “Share my media” check box, select “Marantz AV8802”, and then click “Allow”.
- 4** As you did in step 3, select the icon of the device (other PCs and mobile devices) you want to use as a media controller, and then click “Allow”.
- 5** Click “OK” to finish.

### ■ Sharing media stored in NAS

Change settings on the NAS to allow this unit and other devices (PCs and mobile devices) used as media controllers to access the NAS. For details, see the owner’s manual that came with the NAS.



## Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

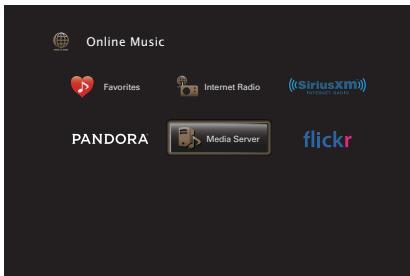
Use this procedure to play music files, image files or playlists.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power.  
("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 79))
- ② Prepare the computer. (☞ Computer's operating instructions)

### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

### 3 Use $\Delta\triangledown\triangleleft\triangleright$ to select "Media Server", then press ENTER.



**4** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the server including the file to be played, then press ENTER.

**5** Use  $\nabla\Delta\triangleright$  to select the file, then press ENTER.

Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
⏸	Pause
⏹	Stop
◀◀▶▶	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track
◀◀▶▶	(Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
△▽	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen



- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.
- When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
- If you use Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.
- WMA Lossless files can be played when using a server supporting transcoding, such as Windows Media Player (Ver.11 or later).
- This unit plays back picture (JPEG) files in the order in which they are stored in the folder.

**NOTE**

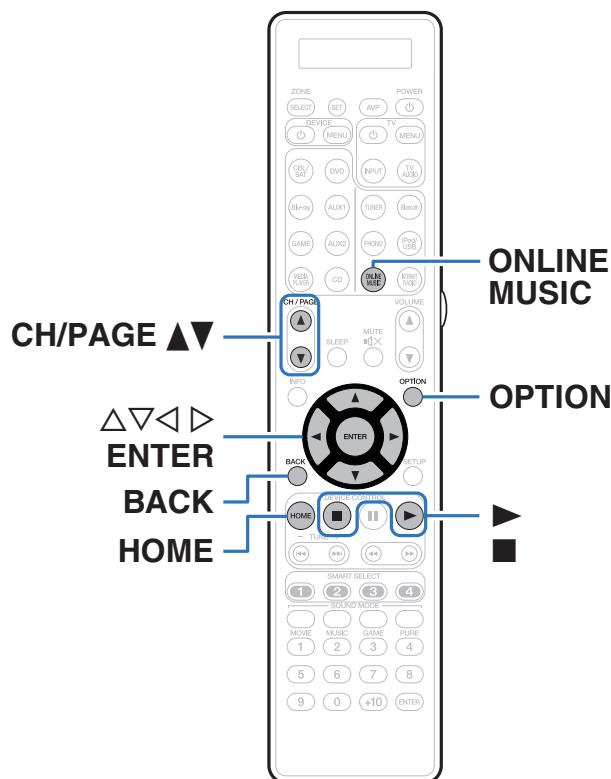
- When playing back music files with your PC or NAS connected through wireless LAN, audio may be interrupted depending on your wireless LAN environment. In this case, connect using a wired LAN.
- Depending on the size of the still picture (JPEG) file, some time may be required for the file to be displayed.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.

## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- "Performing repeat playback" ( p. 139)
- "Performing random playback" ( p. 139)
- "Searching content with keywords (Text Search)" ( p. 141)
- "Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)" ( p. 142)
- "Setting the Slideshow Interval" ( p. 143)
- "Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)" ( p. 143)
- "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)" ( p. 144)
- "Adjusting the tone (Tone)" ( p. 145)
- "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" ( p. 146)
- "Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)" ( p. 147)
- "Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)" ( p. 148)



# Viewing photographs on the Flickr site



- Flickr is an online photo sharing service. You can use this unit to view photographs that have been made public by Flickr users. You do not need an account to use Flickr.

To view photographs that you recorded yourself, you need an account in order to upload these photographs to the Flickr server.

For details, see the Flickr homepage.

<http://www.flickr.com/>

- You can view photographs shared by particular users, or all of the photographs shared on Flickr.



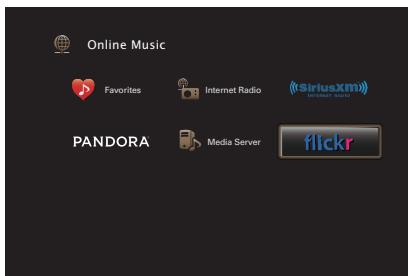
## Viewing photographs shared by particular users

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 79))

### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

### 3 Use $\Delta\triangledown\leftarrow\rightarrow$ to select "Flickr", then press ENTER.



- 4** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Add Flickr Contact”, then press ENTER.
- 5** Enter the screen name that you wish to add to “Contact” (Screen Name: User name you wish to view).

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 188).

**6 After inputting the “Contact”, press “OK”.**

The screen name is added to “Contact”, and the screen name you entered in step 5 is displayed on the top screen of Flickr.

- If you enter a screen name that does not exist, “The Flickr Contact you entered could not be found” is displayed. Check and enter the correct screen name.

- 7 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the screen name added to “Contact”, then press ENTER.**

**8** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the folder, then press ENTER.

<b>Favorites :</b>	Displays the favorite photographs of the specified user.
<b>Photostream :</b>	Displays a list of shared photographs.
<b>PhotoSets :</b>	Displays the folder (photograph album) list.
<b>Contacts :</b>	Displays the screen name used by the specified user in Contacts.
<b>Remove this Contact :</b>	Deletes a user from Flickr Contact.
<b>Add this Contact :</b>	Adds a user from Flickr Contact.

**9** Use  $\Delta\triangledown\triangleright$  to select the photograph, then press ENTER.

The selected photograph is displayed.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
■	Stop
ENTER	Playback (Press and hold) Stop
$\Delta\triangledown$	Display previous photograph / Display next photograph
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen



## Viewing all photographs on Flickr

- 1 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “All Content”, then press ENTER.**
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select the folder, and then press ENTER.**

Displays photographs that are popular from the **Interestingness** : number of user comments or number of times they are added as favorites.

**Recent :** Displays the most recently added photographs.

**Search by text :** Search for photographs by keyword.

- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla\triangleright$  to select the photograph, then press ENTER.**

The selected photograph is displayed.

### NOTE

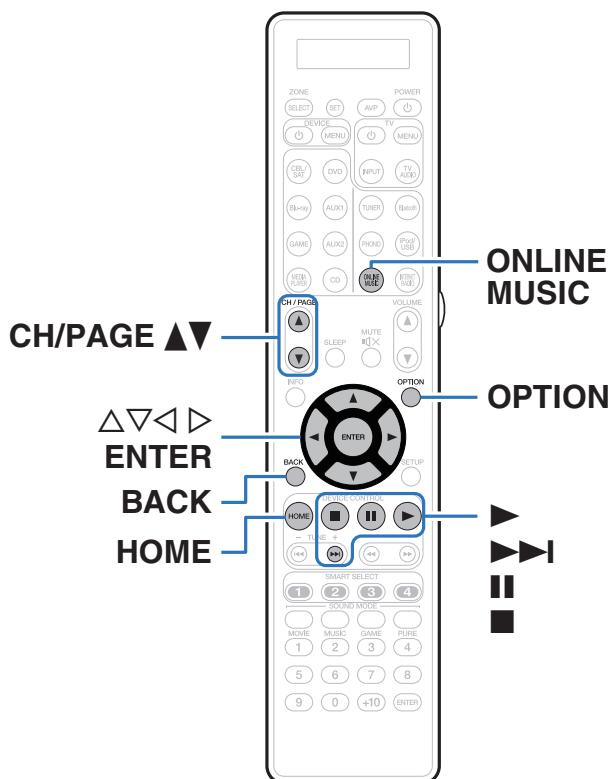
Depending on the file format, some photographs may not be viewable.

## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Setting the Slideshow Interval” ( p. 143)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” ( p. 147)



## Listening to Pandora®



Pandora is an automated music recommendation and Internet Radio service created by the Music Genome Project.

To listen to Pandora you will need a free Pandora account.

If you do not have a Pandora account, you can create one at [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com) or from the Pandora smartphone application.

Playback of Pandora in this unit requires the Pandora account to be linked to the unit. Therefore, access <http://www.pandora.com/marantz> from your personal computer and perform the linkage.



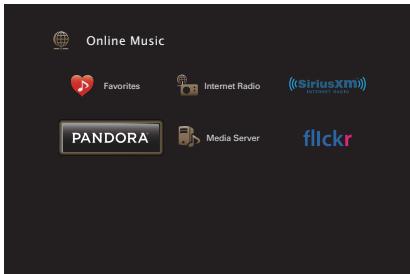
## Listening to Pandora®

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power.  
("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 79))

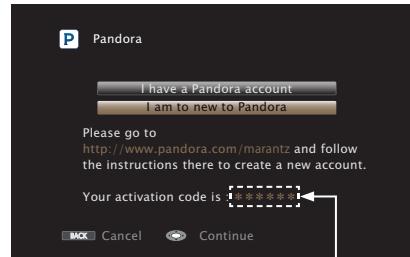
### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

### 3 Use $\Delta\triangledown\leftarrow\rightarrow$ to select "Pandora", then press ENTER.



### 4 If you have a Pandora account, use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select "I have a Pandora account", then press ENTER.

- If you do not have a Pandora account, to select "I am new to Pandora", then press ENTER. The URL of Pandora and activation code are displayed. Access the Pandora web page from your PC and register the displayed activation code and account information. Then press ENTER.



This is an identification code required to register your purchased product to the Pandora service. This code is used to obtain your account.



## 5 Input “Email address” and “Password”.

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 188).
- Press BACK to cancel the input. When “Cancel input?” is displayed, select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

## 6 After inputting the “Email address” and “Password”, select “OK”, then press ENTER.

If the “Email address” and “Password” match, the top menu for Pandora is displayed.



## Creating a new station

You can create up to 100 radio stations.

- 1 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “New Station”, then press ENTER.**
- 2 Input a track or artist name, then press “OK”.**
  - For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 188).
- 3 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Search by Artist” or “Search by Track”, then press ENTER.**

You can search and display a list by track or artist.
- 4 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$ , select a file from the list, press ENTER.**

New station is created.



Your new station will play music with similar qualities to the artist or track you entered.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
⏸	Pause
⏹	Stop
▶▶	Skip to next track
<b>ENTER</b>	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
▽	Skip to next track
<b>CH/PAGE ▲▼</b>	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
<b>HOME</b>	Go to Home screen

## Listening to an existing station

- 1 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  and select the radio station that you want to listen to, then press ENTER.



You can skip up to 6 tracks that are being played back within 1 hour.

## Listening to created radio stations at random

- 1 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Shuffle”, then press ENTER.

Created radio stations are selected at random, and tracks are streamed.



## Giving feedback and managing stations

You can personalize your stations by providing feedback.

### 1 Press ▶ while a track is playing.

The Pandora menu screen is displayed.

Press when you like the track that is being played.

**I like this track :**  
Playback a favorite track.  
Display the  (Thumbs up) icon.

Press when you don't like the track that is being played.

**I don't like this track :**  
Delete that track from the radio station.  
Display the  (Thumbs down) icon.

**Why is this track playing? :** Displays the reason why Pandora selected this track.

**Create station :** Creates a station for the track or artist being played.

**Bookmark this track :**

Bookmarks the artist currently being played. You can check on a computer or iPhone etc. For details, see the Pandora web page.

**I'm tired of this track :**

Press when you don't like the track that is being played.  
The track will not be played for 1 month.

**Delete this station :**

Press when you want to delete the station that is being played.



## Sign Out

Disassociate this unit from your Pandora account.

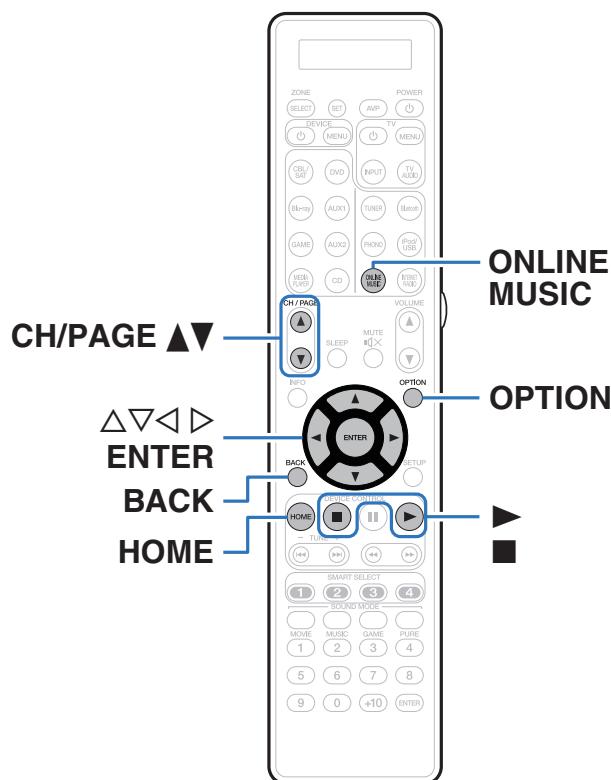
- 1** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Sign Out”, then press ENTER.
- 2** When the popup menu appears, use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

### Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” ( p. 143)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” ( p. 144)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ( p. 145)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ( p. 146)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” ( p. 147)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ( p. 148)



# Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio



You can access SiriusXM to enjoy access to a wide range of unique content.

An All Access package lets you listen to SiriusXM on your computer, smartphone, tablet or Lynx Portable.

For details, see the SiriusXM homepage.

<http://www.siriusxm.com>



## Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio

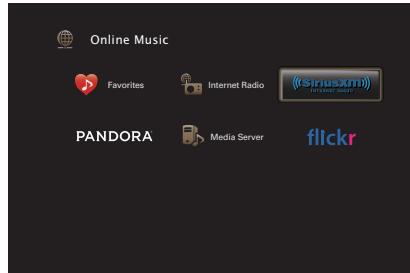
Over 155 channels commercial-free music, plus play-by-play sports, exclusive talk, comedy and entertainment.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power.  
("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 79))
- ② Access the following website from your PC and obtain a SiriusXM account.  
<http://www.siriusxm.com>
  - If you already have SiriusXM Internet Radio credentials, select Sign in in step 4 and enter your SiriusXM username and password. If you need to setup a SiriusXM account or Internet Radio credentials, visit [www.siriusxm.com/care](http://www.siriusxm.com/care)

### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

- 3 Use  $\Delta\triangledown\leftarrow\rightarrow$  to select "SiriusXM", then press ENTER.



- 4 Select "Sign in" and then press ENTER.

- 5 Input "Username" and "Password".

- For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (☞ p. 188).

- 6 Select the "Sign in", then press ENTER.

The top menu of SiriusXM is displayed.

7 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the genre, then press ENTER.

8 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the file, then press ENTER.

The selected file is displayed.

Operation buttons	Function
▶	Playback
■	Stop
ENTER	Playback (Press and hold) Stop
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display
HOME	Go to Home screen

## Sign Out

Disassociate this unit from your SiriusXM account.

- 1 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Sign Out”, then press ENTER.
- 2 When the popup menu appears, use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

## Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)” ( p. 143)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” ( p. 144)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ( p. 145)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ( p. 146)
- “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” ( p. 147)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ( p. 148)

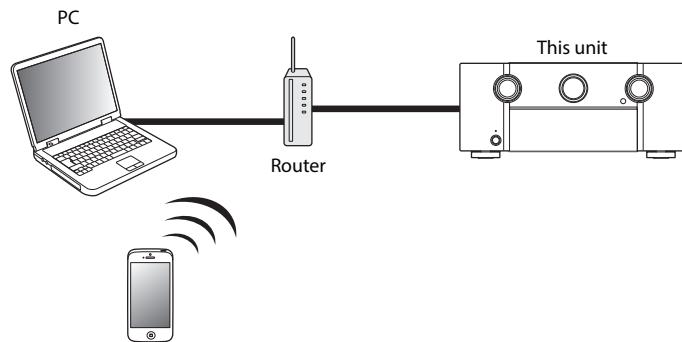


## AirPlay function

Music files stored on your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes can be played on this unit via the network.



- is displayed on the menu screen while AirPlay is being operated.
- Source input will be switched to "Online Music" when AirPlay playback is started.
- You can stop AirPlay playback by pressing  $\triangle$  or choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press STATUS on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.



## Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad

If you update your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” directly to this unit.

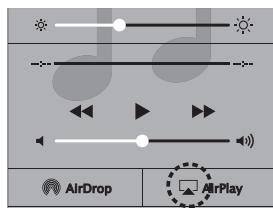
### 1 Connect your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad Wi-Fi to the same network as this unit.

- For details, see your device’s manual.

### 2 Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.

■ is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

### 3 Tap the AirPlay icon ■.



### 4 Select the speaker (devices) you want to use.

## Playing iTunes music with this unit

**1** Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.

### 2 Turn this unit ON.

Set “IP Control” to “Always On” for this unit. (☞ p. 261)

#### NOTE

When “IP Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

**3** Start iTunes and click the AirPlay icon ■ to select the main unit.



**4** Choose a song and click play in iTunes.

The music will stream to this unit.

## Selecting multiple speakers (devices)

It is possible to play iTunes songs on your home's AirPlay compatible speakers (devices) other than those of this unit.

- 1 Click the AirPlay icon  and select "Multiple".**
- 2 Check the speakers you want to use.**

### NOTE

In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level.

You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

## Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit

With this unit's remote control unit, you can perform iTunes song play, pause, and auto search (cue) operations.

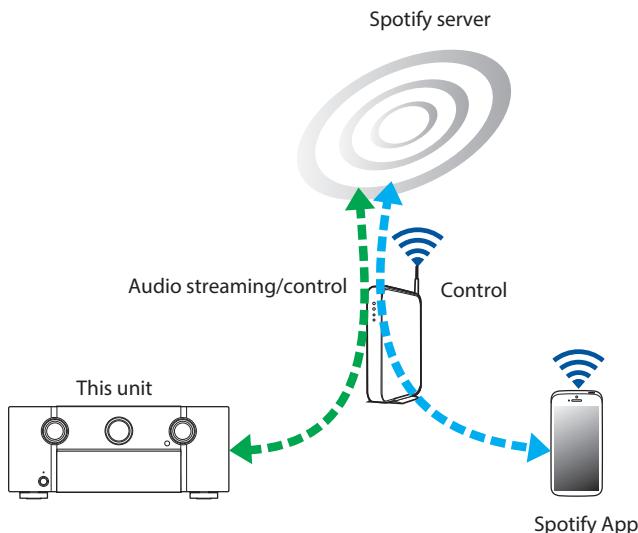
- 1 Select the "Edit" - "Preferences..." in the iTunes menu.**
- 2 Select "Devices" in the iTunes setting window.**
- 3 Check "Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers", and then click "OK".**



## Spotify Connect function

Spotify is the world's most popular streaming service. If you subscribe to Spotify Premium, you can control your new speaker with your phone or tablet. Because Spotify is built-in to your speaker, you can still take calls or use other apps - the music never stops.

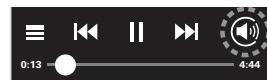
To try Spotify Premium free for 30 days, or learn more about Connect, please go to [www.spotify.com/connect](http://www.spotify.com/connect)



### Playing Spotify music with this unit

Download the “Spotify App” onto your Android or iOS device beforehand. To play a Spotify track in this unit, you need to register in the Spotify premium account first.

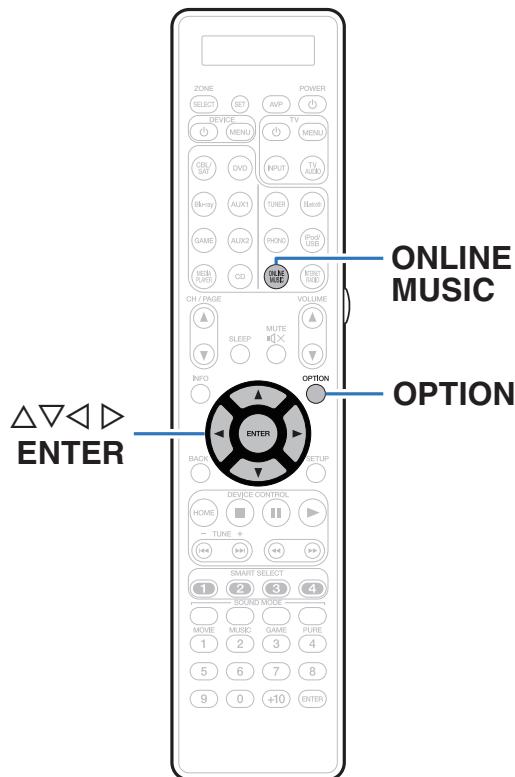
- 1 Connect the Wi-Fi settings of the iOS or Android device in the same network as this unit.
- 2 Launch the Spotify App.
- 3 Play back the Spotify track.
- 4 Tap the  icon to select the unit.



The music will stream to this unit.

# Convenience functions

This section explains how to use convenient functions that can be used for each input source.



## Performing repeat playback

- Supported input sources :  
USB / Media Server / Bluetooth

**1** While content is playing, press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

**2** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Repeat”, then press ENTER.

**3** Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select repeat playback mode.

Off (Default):	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
-------------------	-----------------------------------

One:	A file being played is played repeatedly.
------	-------------------------------------------

All:	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.
------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

**4** Press ENTER.

The display returns to the playback screen.



- This cannot be set up if the Bluetooth device does not support the repeat setting under the AVRCP profile.
- “Repeat” settings are stored for each input source.

## Performing random playback

- Supported input sources :  
USB / Media Server / Bluetooth

**1** While content is playing, press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

**2** Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Random”, then press ENTER.

**3** Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select random playback mode.

Off (Default):	Disable random playback.
-------------------	--------------------------

On:	Randomly play back all tracks in the current playback folder.
-----	---------------------------------------------------------------

**4** Press ENTER.

The display returns to the playback screen.



- During random playback, each time playback of a track is completed, another track is randomly selected for playback from tracks in the folder. Therefore, it's possible that you may hear a track played back more than once during random playback.
- This cannot be set up if the Bluetooth device does not support the random setting under the AVRCP profile.
- “Random” settings are stored for each input source.

## Registering to Favorites

You can register a total of 100 favorites.

- Supported input sources : Internet Radio / Media Server / Pandora / SiriusXM**

- 1 While content is playing, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

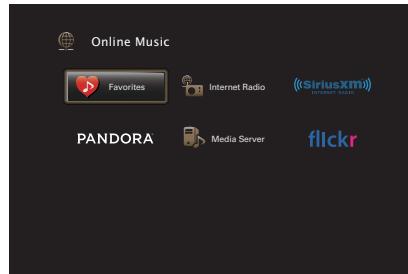
- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Save to Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

“Favorite added” is displayed, and the current content is added to favorites.

- The display returns to the playback screen when the procedure is completed.

## Playing back content added to the “Save to Favorites”

- 1 Press ONLINE MUSIC.**
- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown\leftarrow\rightarrow$  to select “Favorites”, then press ENTER.**



- 3 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the content you want to play, then press ENTER.**

Playback starts.

## Deleting content added to favorites

- 1 Press ONLINE MUSIC.**
- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown\leftarrow\rightarrow$  to select “Favorites”, then press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the content you want to delete from favorites, then press OPTION.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 4 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Remove from Favorites”, then press ENTER.**

“Favorite removed” is displayed, and the selected content is deleted from favorites.

- The screen returns to the previous screen when the delete process is complete.

## Searching content with keywords (Text Search)

- Supported input sources :**  
USB / Internet Radio / Media Server
- 1 While the content is playing, press OPTION.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
  - 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Text Search”, then press ENTER.**  
The keyboard input screen is displayed.
  - 3 Enter the first character of the Internet Radio station or file you want to search for, and then press “OK”.**
    - For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” ( p. 188).
  - 4 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select the content you want to play, then press ENTER.**  
Playback starts.



“Text Search” searches for Internet Radio stations or files that start with the entered first character from the displayed list.

### NOTE

Text Search may not work for some lists.

## Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)

### □ Supported input sources : USB

#### 1 Play back a still picture.

- Playing back still pictures stored on USB memory devices.  
(☞ p. 94)

#### 2 Play back a music file. (☞ p. 94)

#### 3 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 4 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “Slideshow”, then press ENTER.

The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.

### □ Supported input sources : Internet Radio / Media Server

#### 1 Play back a still picture.

- Play back still pictures stored on Media Server. (☞ p. 116)
- Play back still pictures stored on Flickr. (☞ p. 120)

#### 2 Play back a music file of Media Server or Internet Radio station. (☞ p. 112, 116)

#### 3 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 4 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “Slideshow”, then press ENTER.

The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.



## Setting the Slideshow Interval

Set the playback interval when playing back a slideshow of still picture (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device or media server, or on the Flickr website.

- Supported input sources :**  
USB / Media Server / Flickr

**1 While the list is displayed, press OPTION.**

The option menu screen is displayed.

**2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Slideshow Interval”, then press ENTER.**

**3 Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to set the display time.**

**Off:** The slide show is not played back.

**5s - 60s** Set the time for displaying a single picture when (Default: 5s): playing back images in the slide show.

**4 Press ENTER.**



The “Slideshow Interval” settings are reflected for all input sources.

## Adjusting the audibility of dialog and vocals (Dialog Enhancer)

This function adjusts the center channel frequency band to enhance the dialog in the movies and vocals in music for easier listening.

**1 Press OPTION.**

**2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Dialog Enhancer”, then press ENTER.**

**3 Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select your favorite enhancement effect.**

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Does not enhance the dialog or vocals.
<b>Low / Medium / High:</b>	Enhances the dialog and vocals.

**4 Press ENTER.**



“Dialog Enhancer” settings are stored for each source.

## Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)

The volume of each channel can be changed while listening to music. You can set this for each input source.

### 1 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “Channel Level Adjust”, then press ENTER.

The channel level adjust screen is displayed.

### 3 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select the channel that you wish to adjust.

### 4 Use $\leftarrow\rightarrow$ to adjust the volume.

---

-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

---



- Select “Reset” and press ENTER if you want to restore the adjustment values of the various channels to “0.0 dB” (default).
- Headphone volume can be adjusted when a headphone is connected.
- “Channel Level Adjust” settings are stored for each input source.
- You can only set this for speakers that output audio. In addition, you cannot set this when in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”. (☞ p. 207)

## Adjusting the tone (Tone)

Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.

### 1 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select “Tone”, then press ENTER.

The Tone screen is displayed.

### 3 Use $\triangleleft\triangleright$ to set the tone control function to on/off.

**On:** Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).

**Off**  
**(Default):** Playback without tone adjustment.

- 4** Select “On” in step 3 and press  $\nabla$  to select the sound range to be adjusted.

**Bass:** Adjust bass.

**Treble:** Adjust treble.

- 5** Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to adjust the tone, then press ENTER.

-6 dB – +6 dB (Default : 0 dB)



- “Tone” settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” is set to “On”. (☞ p. 199)
- You cannot set this when no audio signal is input or in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”. (☞ p. 207)
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to “7.1CH IN”.

## Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)

This unit can display video from a different source on TV during audio playback. You can set this for each input source.

### Supported input sources:

iPod/USB / CD\* / HD Radio / Online Music /  
Bluetooth / Phono

\* This cannot be set when any of the HDMI, component video or video connectors are assigned.

### 1 Press OPTION during audio playback.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “Video Select”, then press ENTER.

### 3 Use $\triangleleft\triangleright$ to select the Video Select mode.

Off (Default):	Disable Video Select mode.
On:	Enable Video Select mode.

- 4 If you selected “On” in step 3, press  $\nabla$  and select “Source”.
- 5 Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select the input source for video you want to play back, then press ENTER.



“Video Select” settings are stored for each input source.

## Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)

- **Supported input sources :**  
CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game / AUX1 /  
AUX2 / Media Player / iPod/USB /  
Online Music / CD\* / TV Audio\*

\* You can set the picture mode when an HDMI, component video or video connector is assigned.

- 1 Press OPTION during video playback.

The option menu screen is displayed.

- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select “Picture Mode”, then press ENTER.

- 3 Use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select picture mode.

**Off:** No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.

**Standard:** The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.

**Movie:** A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.

**Vivid:** A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.

**Streaming:** A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.

**ISF Day:** A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.

**ISF Night:** A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.

**Custom:** Adjusts the picture quality manually.

- 4 Press ENTER.



“Picture Mode” settings are stored for each input source.

## Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)

You can play back the music being played back in MAIN ZONE simultaneously in ZONE2 and ZONE3 (other rooms).

It is useful when you want to enjoy the same music at the same time in multiple rooms during home party or when you want to play back the same BGM in the entire house.

### 1 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.

### 3 Select “Start”, then press ENTER.

- The input sources for ZONE2 and ZONE3 are switched to the same input source as for MAIN ZONE, and playback starts in the All Zone Stereo mode.
- When you do not want ZONE2 or ZONE3 to participate in All Zone Stereo, press ENTER to clear the check mark and then press “Start”.

### ■ Stopping the All Zone Stereo mode

#### 1 During playback in All Zone Stereo mode, press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

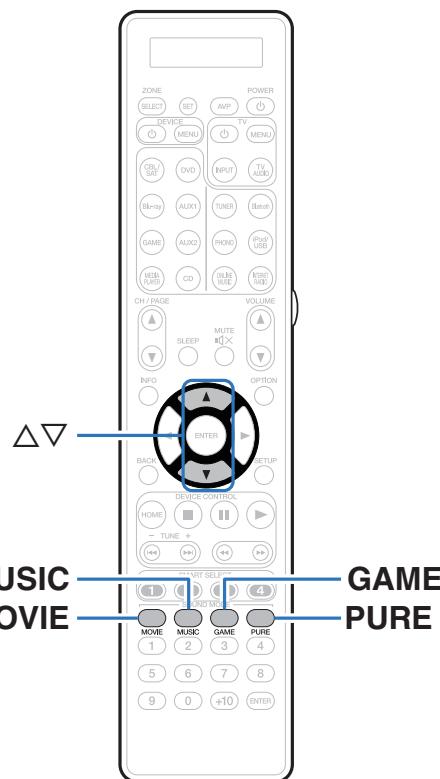
#### 2 Use $\Delta\triangledown$ to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.

#### 3 Select “Stop”, then press ENTER.



- The All Zone Stereo mode is canceled even when the power supply of the MAIN ZONE is turned off.
- In the All Zone Stereo mode, only the “Multi Ch Stereo” and “Stereo” sound modes can be selected.
- When “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, the All Zone Stereo mode is not available. (☞ p. 207)
- When “Input Mode” is set to other than “7.1CH IN”, the All Zone Stereo mode is available. (☞ p. 221)

## Selecting a sound mode



This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playback modes.

Disc formats such as Blu-ray Disc and DVD, as well as being supported by digital broadcasting, and even by streaming movies and music from internet-based subscription services.

This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.



For audio formats recorded on a disc, see the disc jacket or label.

## Selecting a sound mode

### 1 Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a sound mode.

**MOVIE** : Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.

**MUSIC** : Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying music.

**GAME** : Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying games.

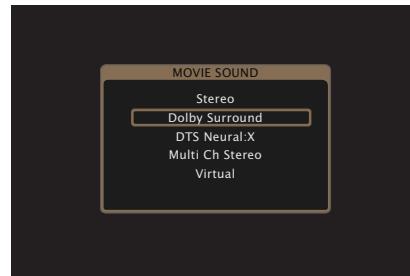


- The MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most appropriate sound mode for the content is automatically selected.
- This can also be set by pressing MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME on the main unit.

### ■ Switching the sound mode

- Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to display a list of the sound modes that can be selected. Each time you press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME, the sound mode changes.
- While the list is displayed, you can also use  $\Delta\triangledown$  to select a sound mode.
- Try out various sound modes and enjoy sound mode in your favorite mode.

[Example] When MOVIE is pressed



## Direct playback

Sound recorded in source is played as is.

### 1 Press PURE to select “Direct”.

Direct playback begins.



- While DSD signals are played back, “DSD Direct” is displayed.
- This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

## Pure Direct playback

This mode is for playback with higher sound quality than in Direct playback mode.

This mode turns off the main unit display and analog video circuit. Doing so suppresses noise sources that affect sound quality.

### 1 Press PURE to select “Pure Direct”.

The display goes dark, and Pure Direct playback begins.  
The PURE DIRECT indicator lights.



- In Direct and Pure Direct sound modes, the following items cannot be adjusted.
  - Dialog Enhancer ( p. 143)
  - Tone ( p. 145)
  - M-DAX ( p. 196)
  - MultiEQ® XT32 ( p. 198)
  - Dynamic EQ ( p. 199)
  - Dynamic Volume ( p. 200)
  - Graphic EQ ( p. 202)
- This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

### NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the Pure Direct mode.
- When the Pure Direct mode has been selected, the display turns off after about 5 seconds.



## Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback.

Perform stereo playback when the input signal is PCM. When the input signal is Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

### 1 Press PURE to select “Auto”.

Auto surround playback begins.



This can also be set by pressing PURE DIRECT on the main unit.

## ■ Description of sound mode types

### Dolby sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Dolby Surround	This mode uses Dolby Surround Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use ceiling speakers such as top middle speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
Dolby Digital	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby Digital.
Dolby TrueHD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby TrueHD.
Dolby Digital Plus	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby Digital Plus.
Dolby Atmos*	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with Dolby Atmos. It decodes Dolby Atmos content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.

\* This mode is not supported in a 5.1ch or less speaker configuration.



**DTS sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
DTS Neo:X	This matrix decoding technology uses the DTS Neo:X decoder to playback 2-channel source or 5.1/6.1/7.1-channel surround sources as a maximum of 11.1-channel surround sound. The “Music” mode is suitable for playing music, the “Cinema” mode is suitable for playing movies and the “Game” mode is suitable for playing games.
DTS Surround	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.
DTS ES Dscrt6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added using the discrete method is played as an independent channel. Since all channels are independent, the 360-degree spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.
DTS ES Mtrix6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added to the surround-left and surround-right channels by a matrix encoder at software recording time is decoded by this unit's matrix decoder and played from each channel (surround left, surround right, surround back).
DTS 96/24	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24.
DTS-HD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.
DTS Express	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express.

\* This can be selected when “Speaker Config.” - “Surr. Back” is not set to “None”. (☞ p. 246)



## Update (DTS:X)

Sound mode type	Description
DTS:X	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS:X. It decodes DTS:X content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
DTS Neural:X	This mode uses DTS Neural:X Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use height speakers such as front height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.



- You can select DTS:X or DTS Neural:X if updated to DTS:X.
- DTS Neo:X is no longer supported once you update to DTS:X.

## Upgrade (Auro-3D)

### Auro-3D sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auro-3D	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create three-dimensional audio output using the Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D with a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to create highly realistic three-dimensional audio output.
Auro-2D Surround	This mode uses an Auro-3D decoder to create Surround Sound without a Height Channel. It is ideal for playback of signals encoded as Auro-3D without a Height Channel. If signals not encoded as Auro-3D are input, an Upmixer called the Auro-Matic is used to output Surround Sound.



**PCM multi-channel sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch In	This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM/DSD sources.

**Audyssey DSX® sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Audyssey DSX® (A-DSX)*	This mode creates playback for the new channels (front wide or front height) in 5.1-channel systems. By adding front wide or front height channels, the surround sound effects sound become more three dimensional and realistic.

\* This can be selected when a setting other than "None" is selected for "Front Height" or "Front Wide", and a setting other than "None" is selected for "Center" in "Speaker Config.". (☞ p. 245)



## Original sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch Stereo	This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers. Stereo audio (2-channel) sources are played back via the front (L/R) speakers, the surround speakers and surround back speakers (if connected).
Virtual	This mode lets you experience an expansive surround sound effect when playing back through just the front (L/R) speakers only, and when listening with stereo headphones.

## Auto sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Auto	In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby Digital EX, Dolby Atmos, DTS, DTS-HD, DTS:X, DTS-ES, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used. For Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.



## Stereo sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Stereo	<p>This mode plays 2-channel stereo audio with no additional surround sound processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sound is output from the front left and right speakers, and subwoofer if connected.</li><li>• When multi-channel signals are inputted, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played back with no additional surround sound processing.</li></ul>

## Direct sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Direct	<p>This mode plays back audio as recorded in the source.</p>
Pure Direct	<p>This mode plays back an even higher quality sound than the “Direct” mode. The following circuits are stopped in order to further improve sound quality.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Display indicator circuit of the main body (display will go off.)</li><li>• The analog video input/output switcher and processor is disabled.</li></ul>



## ■ Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal

- The following sound modes can be selected using the MOVIE, MUSIC and GAME buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu "Surround Parameter" to enjoy surround sound the way you like it. (☞ p. 190)

Input signal	Sound mode	Sound mode		
		MOVIE	MUSIC	GAME
2-channel *1	Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Neo:X Cinema *2	<input type="radio"/>		
	DTS Neo:X Music *2		<input type="radio"/>	
	DTS Neo:X Game *2			<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Virtual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

\*2 This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1, 7.1, 9.1 or 11.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.



Input signal	Sound mode	Sound mode		
		MOVIE	MUSIC	GAME
Multi-channel *3	Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital + Neo:X Cinema	<input type="radio"/>		
	Dolby Digital + Neo:X Music		<input type="radio"/>	
	Dolby Digital + Neo:X Game			<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby TrueHD	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby TrueHD + Dolby Surround*5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Atmos*6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby TrueHD	Dolby TrueHD A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby TrueHD + Neo:X Cinema	<input type="radio"/>		
	Dolby TrueHD + Neo:X Music		<input type="radio"/>	
	Dolby TrueHD + Neo:X Game			<input type="radio"/>

\*3 Some sound modes cannot be selected depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 326).

\*4 These modes add new channels to 5.1-channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing. (☞ p. 201)

\*5 This can be selected when the input signal does not contain Dolby Atmos.

\*6 This can be selected when the input signal contains Dolby Atmos.



Input signal	Sound mode	Sound mode		
		MOVIE	MUSIC	GAME
Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital Plus	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital Plus + Dolby Surround*5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Atmos*6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital Plus A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital Plus + Neo:X Cinema	<input type="radio"/>		
	Dolby Digital Plus + Neo:X Music		<input type="radio"/>	
	Dolby Digital Plus + Neo:X Game			<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Atmos	Dolby Atmos	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Multi-channel*3	DTS ES Dscrt 6.1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS ES Mtrx 6.1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS 96/24	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Surround A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS + Neo:X Cinema	<input type="radio"/>		
	DTS + Neo:X Music		<input type="radio"/>	
	DTS + Neo:X Game			<input type="radio"/>

\*3 Some sound modes cannot be selected depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" ( p. 326).

\*4 These modes add new channels to 5.1-channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing. ( p. 201)

\*5 This can be selected when the input signal does not contain Dolby Atmos.

\*6 This can be selected when the input signal contains Dolby Atmos.



Input signal	Sound mode	Sound mode		
		MOVIE	MUSIC	GAME
DTS-HD / DTS Express	DTS-HD HI RES	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD MSTR	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD MSTR A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Express	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Express A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD HI RES A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD + Neo:X Cinema	<input type="radio"/>		
	DTS-HD + Neo:X Music		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD + Neo:X Game			<input type="radio"/>
Multi-channel *3	Multi Ch In	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch In 7.1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi In + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi In A-DSX *4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi In + Neo:X Cinema	<input type="radio"/>		
	Multi In + Neo:X Music		<input type="radio"/>	
	Multi In + Neo:X Game			<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Virtual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
PCM multi-channel				

\*3 Some sound modes cannot be selected depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 326).

\*4 These modes add new channels to 5.1-channel surround using Audyssey DSX® processing. (☞ p. 201)



## Update (DTS:X)

Input signal	Sound mode	Sound mode		
		MOVIE	MUSIC	GAME
2-channel *1	DTS Neural:X *2	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Multi-channel	DTS:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS:X MSTR	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD/DTS Express	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	PCM multi-channel	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

\*2 This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1, 7.1 or 9.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.



- You can select DTS:X or DTS Neural:X if updated to DTS:X.
- DTS Neo:X is no longer supported once you update to DTS:X.
- DTS or DTS-HD signal + Dolby Surround up-mixing is not supported once you update to DTS:X. Please select DTS Neural:X for DTS coded material.
- Dolby or Dolby TrueHD + DTS Neural:X up-mixing is not supported. Please select Dolby Surround for Dolby coded material.

## Upgrade (Auro-3D)

Input signal	Sound mode	Sound mode		
		MOVIE	MUSIC	GAME
2-channel *1/Multi-channel *3	Auro-3D*7	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Auro-2D Surround*8	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

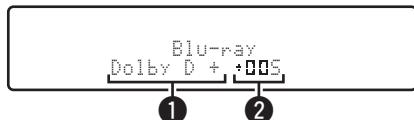
\*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

\*3 Some sound modes cannot be selected depending on the audio format or number of channels of the input signal. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 326).

\*7 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when a speaker configuration without front height speakers is used.

\*8 It cannot be selected when headphones are used, or when only front speakers are used.

## ■ Views on the display



### ① Shows a decoder to be used.

- In the case of the Dolby Digital Plus decoder, “Dolby D +” is displayed.

### ② Shows a decoder that creates sound output.

- “DTS” indicates that the Dolby Surround decoder is being used.

# HDMI control function

A recent addition to the HDMI standard is CEC (Consumer Electronics Control), which allows control signals from one device to communicate with another device via the HDMI cable connection.

## Setting procedure

- 1 Enable the HDMI control function of this unit.**  
Set "HDMI Control" to "On". (☞ p. 209)
- 2 Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.**
- 3 Set the HDMI control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.**
  - Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
  - Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.
- 4 Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.**

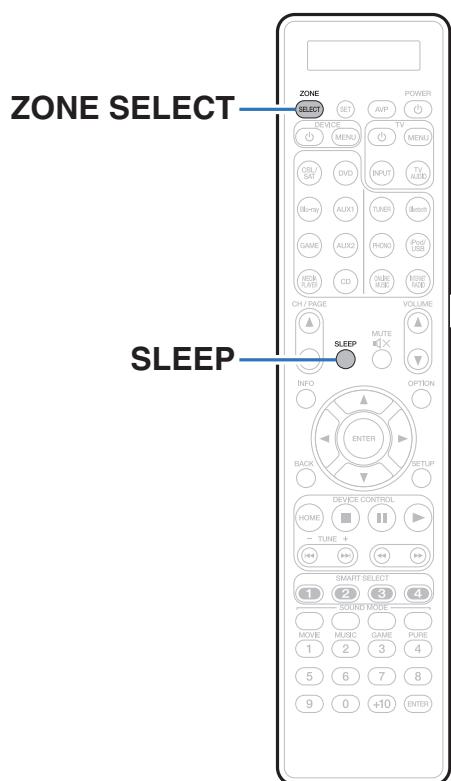
- 5 Switch the input source of this unit to check that video from the player connected by HDMI is played back correctly.**
- 6 When you turn the TV's power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.**

### NOTE

- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner's manual of each device for details beforehand.
- The HDMI ZONE2 function is not compatible with the HDMI control function.
- When the HDMI ZONE2 function is used with "HDMI Control" in the menu set to "On", the HDMI ZONE2 function may not fully work.



## Sleep timer function



You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep. The sleep timer function can be set for each zone.

## Using the sleep timer

- 1 Press ZONE SELECT to switch “MAIN”, “ZONE2” or “ZONE3”.**
  
- 2 Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.**
  - The sleep timer indicator lights up on the display and the sleep timer starts.
  - You can set the sleep timer in the range from 10 to 120 minutes in steps of 10 minutes.

### ■ Checking the remaining time

Press SLEEP when the sleep timer is in operation.  
The remaining time appears on the display.

### ■ To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to select “Off”.  
The sleep timer indicator on the display turns off.

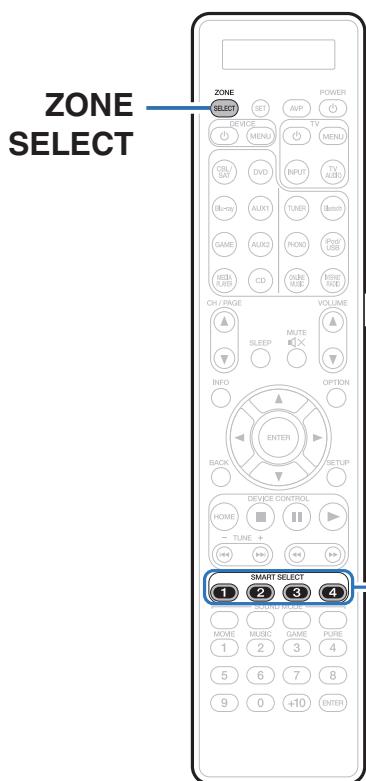


The sleep timer setting is canceled when the unit switches to standby mode.

#### NOTE

The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.

## Smart select function



Settings such as the input source, volume level and sound mode can be registered to the SMART SELECT 1 - 4 buttons.

You can simply press one of the registered SMART SELECT buttons in subsequent playbacks to switch to the group of saved settings in a batch.

By saving frequently used settings at the SMART SELECT 1 – 4 buttons, you will always be able to easily call up the same playback environment.

The Smart Select function can be memorized for each zone.



## Calling up the settings

- 1 Press ZONE SELECT to switch “MAIN”, “ZONE2” or “ZONE3”.**
- 2 Press SMART SELECT.**

The Smart Select settings registered to the button you pressed are called up.

- The default settings for the input source and volume are as shown below.

【MAIN ZONE】

Button	Input source	Volume
SMART SELECT 1	CBL/SAT	40
SMART SELECT 2	Blu-ray	40
SMART SELECT 3	Media Player	40
SMART SELECT 4	Online Music	40

【ZONE2】 / 【ZONE3】

Button	Input source	Volume
SMART SELECT 1	CBL/SAT	40
SMART SELECT 2	Blu-ray	40
SMART SELECT 3	Media Player	40
SMART SELECT 4	Online Music	40



## Changing the settings

### 1 Set the items below to the settings you want to register.

The following settings from ① to ⑨ can be memorized for MAIN ZONE, and settings ① and ② can be memorized for ZONE2 and ZONE3.

- ① Input source (☞ p. 86)
- ② Volume (☞ p. 87)
- ③ Sound mode (☞ p. 149)
- ④ Audyssey (Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey LFC™) (☞ p. 198 - 200)
- ⑤ “M-DAX” (☞ p. 196)
- ⑥ “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Channel Level Adjust)” (☞ p. 144)
- ⑦ “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (☞ p. 146)
- ⑧ “Adjusting the picture quality for your viewing environment (Picture Mode)” (☞ p. 147)
- ⑨ “Video Output” (☞ p. 207)



Press and hold SMART SELECT while a radio station is being received or a track is being played back with any of the following sources, the current radio station or track is memorized.

- HD Radio / Internet Radio / Media Server / Pandora / SiriusXM / Favorites / iPod/USB

**2 Press ZONE SELECT to switch “MAIN”, “ZONE2” or “ZONE3”.**

**3 Press and hold the desired SMART SELECT until “Smart\* Memory”, “Z2 Smart\* Memory” or “Z3 Smart\* Memory” appears on the display.**

The current settings will be memorized.

\* is displayed the number for the SMART SELECT button you pressed.

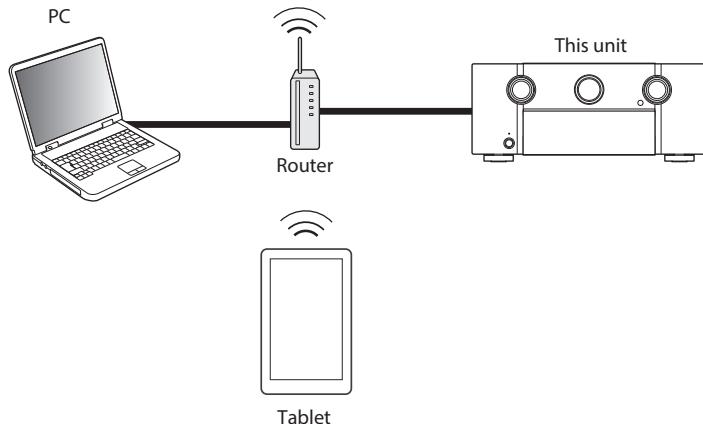
### ■ Changing the Smart Select Name

The MAIN ZONE Smart Select name displayed on the TV screen or display of this unit can be changed to a different name.

For the name change method, see “Smart Select Names” (☞ p. 266).

## Web control function

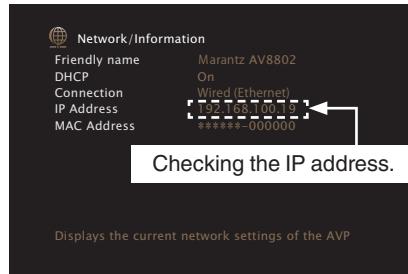
You can control this unit from a web control screen on a web browser.



- This unit and the PC or tablet need to be connected correctly to the network in order to use the web control function. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 79))
- Depending on the settings of your security-related software, you may not be able to access this unit from your PC. If this is the case, then change the settings of the security-related software.

### Controlling the unit from a web control

- 1 Switch the “IP Control” setting to “Always On”.**  
(☞ p. 261)
- 2 Check the IP address of this unit with “Information”.**  
(☞ p. 257)



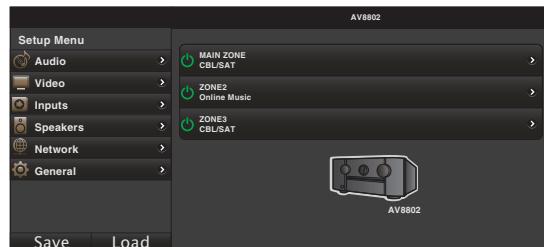
- 3 Start up the web browser.**

## 4 Enter the IP address of this unit in browser's address box.

For example, if the IP address of this unit is "192.168.100.19", enter "http://192.168.100.19".



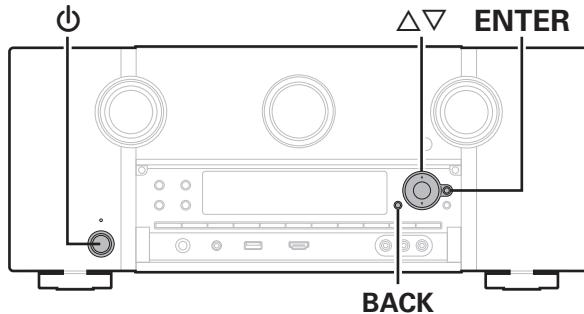
## 5 When the top menu is displayed, click on the menu item you want to operate.



- You can use the "Save" and "Load" functions to store or recall various function settings using web control from a PC.
  - To memorize settings, click "Save" on the Setup Menu screen.
  - To call up settings, click "Load" on the Setup Menu screen.
- We recommend using one of the following web browsers.  
Internet Explorer 10 and above  
Mozilla Firefox 24 and above  
Google Chrome 29 and above  
Safari 5.x and above

## Panel lock function

To prevent accidental operation of this unit, you can disable operation of the buttons on the front panel.



### Disabling all key button operations

- 1** Press  $\odot$  while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.
- 2** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “P/V LOCK On”.
- 3** Press ENTER to enter the setting.  
All button operations except  $\odot$  are disabled.

### Disabling all button operations except VOLUME

- 1** Press  $\odot$  while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.
- 2** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “FP LOCK On”.
- 3** Press ENTER to enter the setting.  
All button operations except  $\odot$  and VOLUME are disabled.

## Canceling the Panel lock function

**1** Press  $\diamond$  while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.

**2** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “FP LOCK \*Off”.

(\* The currently set mode.)

**3** Press ENTER to enter the setting.

The Panel lock function is canceled.

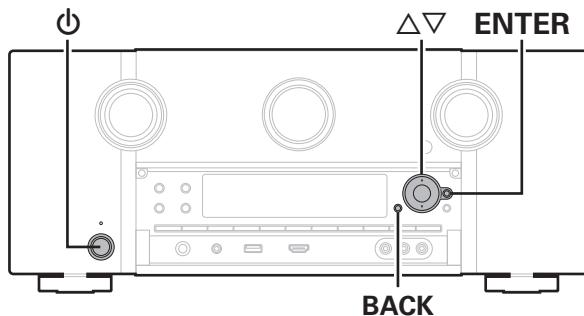


Even when the Panel lock function is set, you can operate the unit using the remote control unit.

## Remote lock function

When connecting an IR receiver, enable the Remote lock function. When the function is enabled, you can not perform operations with the remote control unit.

By default, this function is disabled.



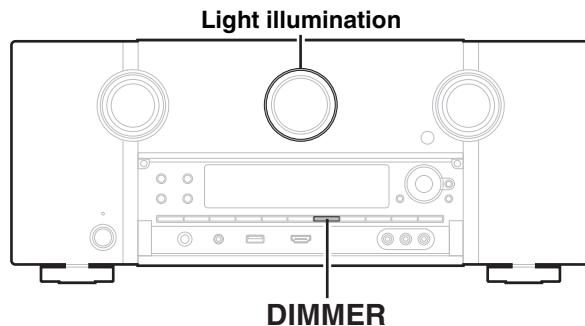
### Disabling the sensor function of the remote control unit

- 1 Press **φ** while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.
- 2 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “RC LOCK On”.
- 3 Press ENTER to enter the setting.

### Enabling the remote sensor function

- 1 Press **φ** while you press and hold BACK and ENTER with the unit in standby mode.
- 2 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “RC LOCK \*Off”.  
(\* The currently set mode.)
- 3 Press ENTER to enter the setting.  
Infrared light receiving function on the main unit is enabled.

## Switches light illumination on/off



You can switch the light illumination around the main display on or off. The default setting is “On”.

**1 Press and hold DIMMER on the main unit for 3 seconds.**

- Carry out the same procedure if you want to change the settings again.

# Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3 (Separate room)

You can operate this unit to enjoy video and audio in a room (ZONE2 and ZONE3) that is different from the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE). You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE, ZONE2 and ZONE3.

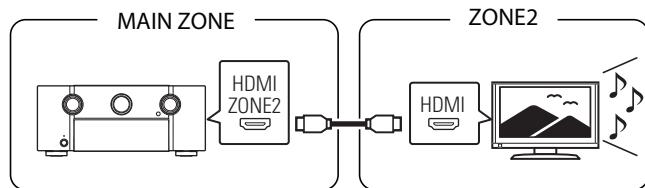
## Connecting ZONE

You can use the following two methods to play back video and audio in ZONE2 and ZONE3.

- Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector (☞ p. 178)
- Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers (☞ p. 179)

### ■ Connection 1 : Connection through the HDMI ZONE2 connector

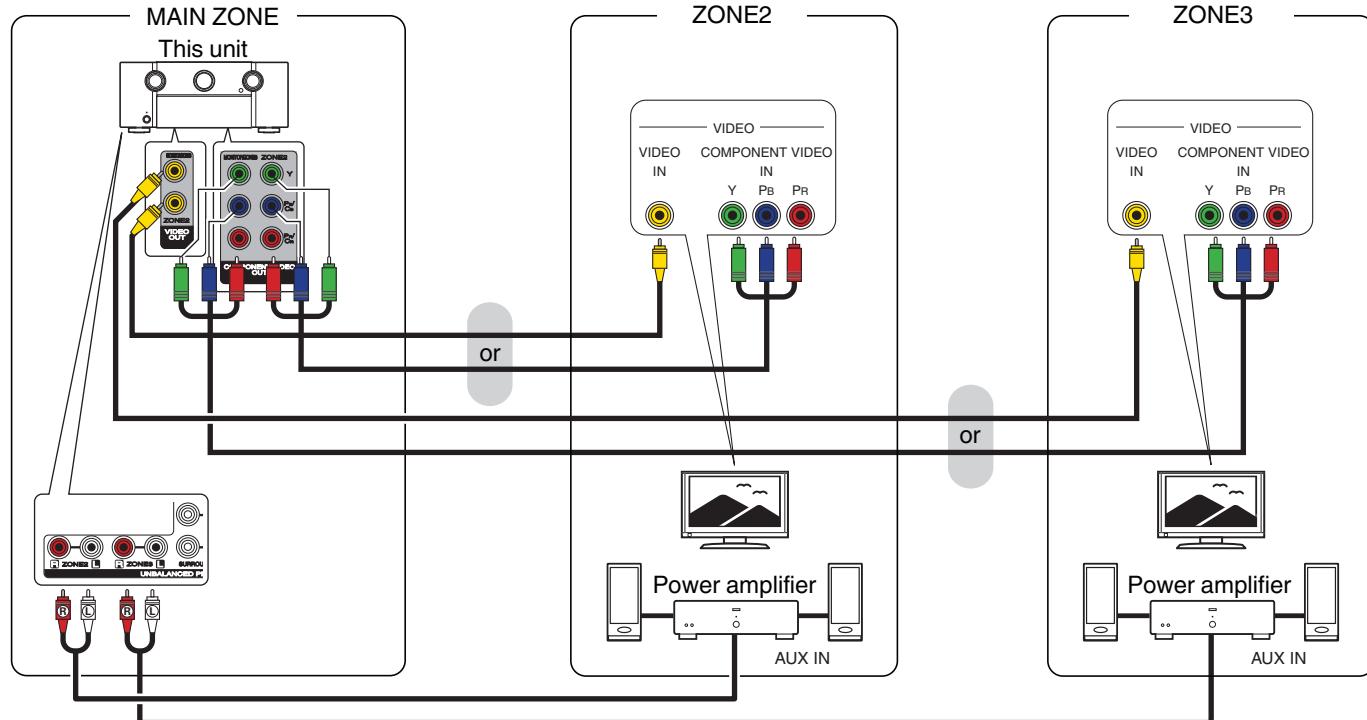
When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, you can play back a video or audio from the device connected to the HDMI 1 – 7 IN connector in ZONE2 (HDMI ZONE2 function).



When a TV is connected to the HDMI ZONE2 OUT connector, and the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source, the MAIN ZONE audio may be mixed down to 2-channel audio.

## ■ Connection 2 : Connection through the video output connector and external power amplifiers

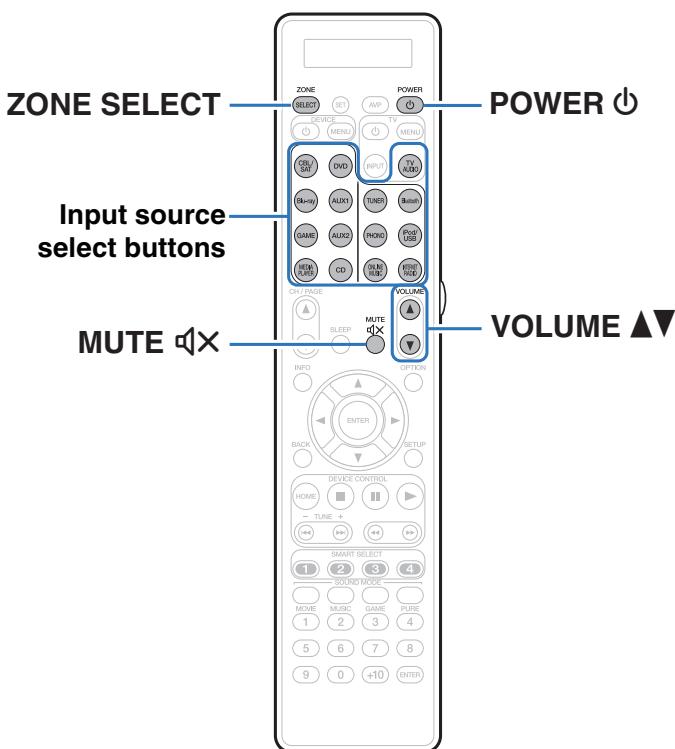
The audio signals of this unit's ZONE2 and ZONE3 audio output connectors are played on the ZONE2 and ZONE3 power amplifiers.





- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from HDMI connector or digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE2.
- If you want to play back HDMI signals other than 2-channel PCM in ZONE2, set "HDMI Audio" to "PCM". ([p. 264](#)) 2-channel PCM signals are output from a device connected to the input source selected for ZONE2 and can be played back in ZONE2.  
In this case, the MAIN ZONE audio will also be converted to 2-channel PCM signals if the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2 are set to the same input source. However, depending on the playback device, the playback signal may not be converted to PCM even if this setting is configured.
- The analog audio signal and the 2-channel PCM signal input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) can be played back in ZONE3.
- When "Analog Video Out" in the menu is set to "ZONE3", the component video and video output connector outputs the ZONE3 video. ([p. 215](#))
- The menu screen is not output in ZONE2.

## Playback in ZONE2/ZONE3



- 1 Press ZONE SELECT to switch “ZONE2” or “ZONE3”.
- 2 Press POWER **⊕** to turn on the ZONE2 or ZONE3 power.  
The multi zone power indicator on the display lights.
  - Power in ZONE2 or ZONE3 can be turned on or off by pressing ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF on the main unit.
- 3 Press the input source select button to select the input source to be played.  
The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2 or ZONE3.
  - To perform an operation with the main unit, press ZONE SELECT. Each time you press ZONE SELECT, the input source changes.



## ■ Adjusting the volume

Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.

- At time of purchase, “Volume Limit” is set to “70 (-10 dB)”.  
 p. 265)



Turn VOLUME after pressing ZONE SELECT on the main unit to adjust the volume.

## ■ Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)

Press MUTE ◄×.

The sound is reduced to the level set at “Mute Level” in the menu.

 p. 266)

- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE ◄× again.

## Menu map

When using menu operations, connect this unit to a TV and operate this unit while viewing the TV.

The recommended settings are configured for this unit by default. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 Audio	<b>Subwoofer Level Adjust</b>	This setting adjusts the volume level for the subwoofer.	<a href="#">189</a>
	<b>Bass Sync</b>	Adjusts the phase shift when there is a delay in the bass (LFE) recorded on a disc.	<a href="#">189</a>
	<b>Surround Parameter</b>	Adjusts surround sound parameters.	<a href="#">190</a>
	<b>M-DAX</b>	Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio content such as MP3 files to enable richer audio playback.	<a href="#">196</a>
	<b>Audio Delay</b>	Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.	<a href="#">197</a>
	<b>Volume</b>	Sets the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.	<a href="#">197</a>
	<b>Audyssey</b>	Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey LFC™ and Audyssey DSX®.	<a href="#">198</a>
	<b>Graphic EQ</b>	Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.	<a href="#">202</a>
 Video	<b>Picture Adjust</b>	Adjusts picture quality.	<a href="#">204</a>
	<b>HDMI Setup</b>	Makes settings for HDMI video/audio output.	<a href="#">206</a>
	<b>Output Settings</b>	Makes settings for video output.	<a href="#">211</a>
	<b>Analog Video Out</b>	Assigns the zone that uses the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT and the VIDEO MONITOR OUT connectors.	<a href="#">215</a>
	<b>On Screen Display</b>	Configures the on-screen display settings.	<a href="#">216</a>
	<b>TV Format</b>	Sets the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.	<a href="#">217</a>

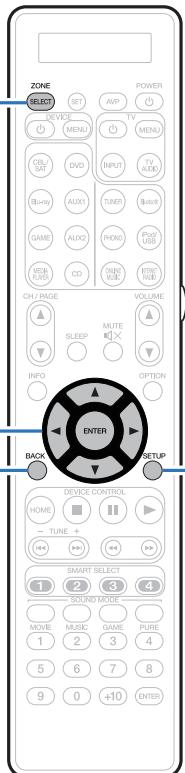


Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 Inputs	<b>Input Assign</b>	Changes input connector assignment.	<a href="#">218</a>
	<b>Source Rename</b>	Changes the display name for input source.	<a href="#">220</a>
	<b>Hide Sources</b>	Removes from the display input sources that are not used.	<a href="#">220</a>
	<b>Source Level</b>	Adjusts the playback level of the audio input.	<a href="#">220</a>
	<b>Input Select</b>	Sets the audio input mode and decode mode.	<a href="#">221</a>
 Speakers	<b>Audyssey® Setup</b>	The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.	<a href="#">222</a>
	<b>Manual Setup</b>	Sets up the speakers manually or changes the Audyssey® Setup settings.	<a href="#">233</a>
 Network	<b>Information</b>	Displays network information.	<a href="#">257</a>
	<b>Connection</b>	Selects whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.	<a href="#">257</a>
	<b>Settings</b>	Used for manually setting the IP address or when using a proxy server.	<a href="#">260</a>
	<b>IP Control</b>	Enables network communication in standby power mode.	<a href="#">261</a>
	<b>Friendly Name</b>	The “Friendly Name” is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.	<a href="#">262</a>
	<b>Diagnostics</b>	Used to check the network connection.	<a href="#">262</a>
	<b>Maintenance Mode</b>	Used when receiving maintenance from a Marantz service engineer or custom installer. This mode is not designed for use by the end user, and should only be used by a trained service technician or custom installation professional.	<a href="#">263</a>



Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 General	Language	Changes the language of the display on the TV screen.	<a href="#">264</a>
	ZONE2 Setup/ ZONE3 Setup	Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.	<a href="#">264</a>
	Zone Rename	Changes the display title of each zone to one you prefer.	<a href="#">266</a>
	Smart Select Names	Changes the Smart Select Name display title to one you prefer.	<a href="#">266</a>
	Trigger Out 1/ Trigger Out 2	Select the conditions for activating trigger out function.	<a href="#">267</a>
	Auto Standby	Configures the Auto Standby energy-saving functions.	<a href="#">267</a>
	Front Display	Makes settings related to the display on this unit.	<a href="#">268</a>
	Information	Shows information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.	<a href="#">268</a>
	Usage Data	Selects whether or not to send anonymous usage data to Marantz.	<a href="#">270</a>
	Firmware	Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display.	<a href="#">271</a>
	Setup Lock	Protects settings from inadvertent changes.	<a href="#">273</a>
 Setup Assistant	Begin Setup...	Performs basic installation/connections/settings from the beginning according to the guidance indicated on the TV screen.	Page 9 of the separate manual “Quick Start Guide”
	Language Select	Sets individual setting items according to the guidance displayed on the TV screen.	
	Speaker Setup		
	Speaker Calibration		
	Network Setup		
	Input Setup		



**ZONE SELECT****△▽◀▶  
ENTER  
BACK****SETUP**

## Menu operations

- 1** Press **ZONE SELECT** to switch “MAIN”.
- 2** Press **SETUP**.  
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.
- 3** Use **△▽◀▶** to select the menu to be set or operated, then press **ENTER**.
- 4** Use **◀▶** to change to desired setting.
- 5** Press **ENTER** to enter the setting.
  - To return to the previous item, press **BACK**.
  - Exiting the Menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



# Inputting characters

On this unit, you can change the name displayed on the following screens to the names that you prefer.

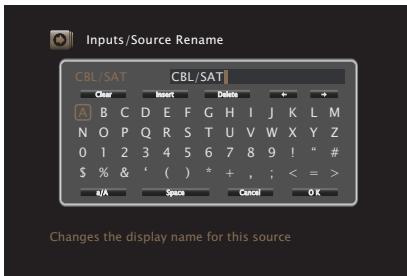
- Preset Name (☞ p. 108)
- Text Search (☞ p. 141)
- Source Rename (☞ p. 220)
- Friendly Name (☞ p. 262)
- Zone Rename (☞ p. 266)
- Smart Select Names (☞ p. 266)
- Character input for the network functions



## Using the keyboard screen

### 1 Display the screen for inputting characters.

[Example] “Source Rename” screen



- 2 Use  $\Delta\triangledown\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleright$  to select  $\leftarrow$  or  $\rightarrow$ .
- 3 Press ENTER to move the cursor to the character that you wish to change.
  - Each time ENTER is pressed, the cursor moves by one character.
- 4 Select a character to be input with  $\Delta\triangledown\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleright$  then press ENTER.
- 5 Repeat steps 2 - 4 to change the name.
- 6 Use  $\Delta\triangledown\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleright$  to select “OK”, then press ENTER.

# Audio

Make audio-related settings.

## Subwoofer Level Adjust

This setting adjusts the volume level for the subwoofer.

### ■ Subwoofer Level Adjust

Set whether to adjust the subwoofer level.

On:	Enables the adjustment of the subwoofer level.
Off (Default):	Disables the adjustment of the subwoofer level.

### ■ Subwoofer 1 Level /Subwoofer 2 Level

These settings adjust the volume level for Subwoofer 1 and Subwoofer 2.

-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

## Bass Sync

For contents recorded in multi-channel such as Blu-ray discs, the recorded low frequency effects (LFE) may be out of sync and delayed. This function corrects such a delay of low frequency effects (LFE).

0 ms – 16 ms (Default : 0 ms)



- How low frequency effects (LFE) are delayed differ according to the disc. Set this to the desired value.
- “Bass Sync” settings are stored for each input source.
- This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is “7.1CH IN”.



## Surround Parameter

You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.

The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see "Sound modes and surround parameters" (☞ p. 321).



- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- "Surround Parameter" settings are stored for each sound mode.

### ■ Cinema EQ

Gently softens the upper treble range of movie soundtracks to reduce possible harshness and improve clarity.

**On:** "Cinema EQ" is used.

**Off  
(Default):** "Cinema EQ" is not used.

### ■ Loudness Management

This sets whether to output as specified in "Dynamic Compression" or output directly without compressing the dynamic range of audio recorded in the disc.

**On  
(Default):**

Outputs are given based on enabling the settings made in "Dynamic Compression" and "Dialog normalization function" (☞ p. 268).

**Off:**

"Dynamic Compression" settings and "Dialogue Normalization" are disabled, and the signals on the disc are output as is.



"Loudness Management" can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is input.

## ■ Dynamic Compression

Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds).

<b>Auto:</b>	Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source.
<b>Low / Medium / High:</b>	These set the compression level.
<b>Off:</b>	Dynamic range compression is always off.



- “Dynamic Compression” can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is input.
- The default setting is “Off”. When the input signal is the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos source, the default setting is “Auto”.
- This can be set when “Loudness Management” is set to “On”.

## ■ Low Frequency Effects

Adjust the low frequency effects level (LFE).

When “Input Mode” is set other than to “7.1CH IN”

-10 dB – 0 dB (Default : 0 dB)

When “Input Mode” is set to “7.1CH IN”

0 dB / +5 dB / +10 dB / +15 dB (Default: +10 dB)



For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below.

- Dolby Digital sources : 0 dB
- DTS movie sources : 0 dB
- DTS music sources: -10 dB

**Update (DTS:X)****■ Dialog Control**

Adjust the volume of dialog in movies, vocals in music, etc. so these can be heard more easily.

**0 – 6** (Default : 0)



This can be set when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

**Update (DTS:X)****■ DTS Neural:X**

DTS Neural:X Expands the non-object based audio signals and optimizes them for your speaker configuration.

**On**  
(Default): Use “DTS Neural:X”.

**Off:** Do not use “DTS Neural:X”.



This can be set when the surround mode is set to “DTS:X” or “DTS:X MSTR”.

## Upgrade (Auro-3D)

### ■ Auro-Matic 3D Preset

Selects the Auro-Matic 3D Preset for fine tuning the Auro-3D experience to specific audio material.

<b>Small:</b>	Small is ideal for pop and chamber music or movies with a lot of dialog. (e.g. comedy)
<b>Medium</b> (Default):	Medium is best used on jazz music or typical movies and TV shows.
<b>Large:</b>	Large is ideal for recordings that were recorded in large spaces. (e.g. orchestral recordings or action movies with big explosions.)
<b>Speech:</b>	Speech is ideal for recordings which are mostly dialog (e.g. news broadcast), and that have virtually no inherent spatial information.



- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

## Upgrade (Auro-3D)

### ■ Auro-Matic 3D Strength

Changes the level of the up-mixed channels in relation to the original input signal.

The value ranges from 1(no up-mixing) to 16(Maximum level, providing maximum effect).

**1 - 16 (Default:10)**



- You can set this when the sound mode is set to Auro-3D.
- This cannot be set if the input signal contains Auro-3D signals containing a Height channel.

## ■ Center Gain

Distributes the dialogue output from the center channel to the front left and right channels and widens the sound image in the front.

0.0 – 1.0



- You can set this when the sound mode is set to DTS Neo:X.
- The smaller the value, the more dialogue is concentrated on the center channel. The larger the value, the more dialogue is distributed to front left and right channels, and the more the sound image widens in the front.

## ■ Center Spread

Center spread expands the center channel signal to left and right front speakers to create a wider frontal audio image for the listener. It is optimized and designed primary for playback of stereo music content.

On:

Use “Center Spread”.

Off

(Default):

Do no use “Center Spread”.



You can set this when sound mode is Dolby Surround.

## ■ Speaker Select

Makes settings for the speakers outputting sound.

### When the sound mode is “DTS Neo:X”

**Surround Back:** Sound is output from the surround back speakers.

**Height:** Sound is output from the front height speakers.

**Wide:** Sound is output from the front wide speakers.

**Back/Height:** Sound is output from the surround back and front height speakers.

**Back/Wide:** Sound is output from the surround back and front wide speakers.

**Height/Wide:** Sound is output from the front height and front wide speakers.



This can be selected when using any of the surround back, front wide or front height speakers.

### When the sound mode is the original sound mode

<b>Floor</b> (Default):	Plays back without height speakers.
----------------------------	-------------------------------------

<b>Floor &amp; Height:</b>	Plays back with height speakers.
----------------------------	----------------------------------

<b>Front:</b>	Plays back only with speakers in front of the surround speaker.
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

## ■ Subwoofer

Turn subwoofer output on and off.

<b>On</b> (Default):	The subwoofer is used.
-------------------------	------------------------

<b>Off:</b>	The subwoofer is not used.
-------------	----------------------------



You can set this when the sound mode is “Direct” or “Stereo” and in the menu “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE+Main”. ( p. 253)

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Surround Parameter” settings are returned to the default settings.

## M-DAX

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The “M-DAX” function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also restores the original bass characteristics for a rich and expanded tonal range.

### ■ Mode

<b>High:</b>	Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs (64 kbps and under).
<b>Medium:</b>	Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources (96 kbps and under).
<b>Low:</b>	Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs (96 kbps and over).
<b>Off:</b>	Do no use “M-DAX”.



- The M-DAX indicator lights.
- This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.
- This item default setting for “Online Music”, “iPod/USB” and “Bluetooth” is “Low”. All others are set to “Off”.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to “7.1CH IN”.
- “M-DAX” settings are stored for each input source.
- This can also be set by pressing M-DAX on the main unit.
- This can be set by pressing M-DAX on the main unit.

## Audio Delay

Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.

**0 ms – 200 ms** (Default : 0 ms)



- Audio Delay for game mode can be set when "Video Mode" is set to "Auto" or "Game". (☞ p. 211)
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".
- "Audio Delay" settings are stored for each input source.

## Volume

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

### ■ Scale

Set how volume is displayed.

<b>0 - 98</b> (Default):	Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98.
<b>-79.5 dB – 18.0 dB:</b>	Display ---dB (Min), in the range -79.5 dB to 18.0 dB.



"Scale" settings are reflected in all the zones.

### ■ Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

**60 (-20 dB) / 70 (-10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)**

**Off** (Default)

### ■ Power On Level

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

**Last**  
(Default): Use the memorized setting from the last session.

**Mute:** Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on.

**1 – 98 (-79 dB – 18 dB) :** The volume is adjusted to the set level.

### ■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

**Full**  
(Default): The sound is muted entirely.

**-40 dB :** The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.

**-20 dB :** The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

## Audyssey

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™. These can be selected after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.

For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see "Explanation of terms" (☞ p. 330).



- "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ", "Reference Level Offset", "Dynamic Volume", "Audyssey LFC™", "Containment Amount" and "Audyssey DSX®" settings are stored for each input source.
- When the sound mode is in the "Direct" or "Pure Direct" mode, "MultEQ® XT32", "Dynamic EQ" and "Dynamic Volume" settings cannot be configured.
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

### ■ MultEQ® XT32

MultEQ® XT32 compensates for both time and frequency characteristics of the listening area based on Audyssey® Setup measurement results. Selection is done from three types of compensation curves. It is recommended that "Reference" is selected.

<b>Reference</b> (Default):	Selects the default calibrated setting with a slight roll off at high frequencies, which is optimized for movies.
<b>L/R Bypass:</b>	Selects the reference setting, but bypasses MultEQ® XT32 on the front left and right speakers.
<b>Flat:</b>	Selects the calibrated setting which is optimized for small rooms where your listening position is closer to the speakers.
<b>Off :</b>	Turn "MultEQ® XT32" equalizer off.



When the headphones are used, "MultEQ® XT32" is automatically set to "Off".

## ■ Dynamic EQ

Solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Works with MultEQ® XT32.

**On**  
(Default): Use Dynamic EQ.

**Off:** Do not use Dynamic EQ.



- When the menu “Dynamic EQ” setting is “On”, it is not possible to do “Tone Control” adjustment. (☞ p. 145)
- This can be set by pressing DYNAMIC EQ on the main unit.

## ■ Reference Level Offset

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard. Recommended setting levels for content are shown below.

<b>0 dB</b> (Film Reference) (Default):	Optimized for content such as movies.
<b>5 dB :</b>	Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.
<b>10 dB :</b>	Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference.
<b>15 dB :</b>	Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.



Setting is enabled when “Dynamic EQ” is “On”. (☞ p. 199)

## ■ Dynamic Volume

Solves the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user's preferred volume setting.

<b>Heavy:</b>	Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds.
<b>Medium:</b>	Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound.
<b>Light:</b>	Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds.
<b>Off (Default):</b>	Do not use Dynamic Volume.



- If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in "Audyssey® Setup", the setting is automatically changed to "Medium". (☞ p. 222)
- This can be set by pressing DYNAMIC VOLUME on the main unit.

## ■ Audyssey LFC™

Adjusts the low frequency band to prevent bass and vibration from being conveyed to neighboring rooms.

<b>On:</b>	Use "Audyssey LFC™".
<b>Off (Default):</b>	Do not use "Audyssey LFC™".

## ■ Containment Amount

Adjusts the amount of low frequency containment. Use higher settings if you have close neighbors.

**1 – 7 (Default : 4)**



This can be set when "Audyssey LFC™" in the menu is set to "On".

## ■ Audyssey DSX®

Provides more immersive surround sound by adding the new channels.

**Wide:** Turn on Audyssey DSX® processing for front wide channel expansion.

**Height:** Turn on Audyssey DSX® processing for front height channel expansion.

**Wides/Heights:** Turns on Audyssey DSX® processing for front wide and front height channel expansion.

**Off  
(Default):** Do not set “Audyssey DSX®”.



- “Audyssey DSX®” can be set when you are using front height speakers or front wide speakers.
- “Audyssey DSX®” is only valid when using a center speaker.
- When 2-channel signals are being played back, “Audyssey DSX®” cannot be used.
- “Audyssey DSX®” cannot be configured if the HD Audio source being played includes Front height and Front wide channels. In this case, the respective channels are played back using the input signals.
- This can be set by pressing A-DSX on the main unit.

## ■ Stage Width

Adjust sound stage width when using front wide speakers.

**-10 – +10** (Default : 0)

## ■ Stage Height

Adjust sound stage height when using front height speakers.

**-10 – +10** (Default : 0)

## Graphic EQ

Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.



- Speakers for which "Graphic EQ" can be set differ according to the sound mode.
- This can be set when the "MultiEQ® XT32" is set to "Off". (☞ p. 198)
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- This cannot be set when the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

### Graphic EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer or not.

**On:** Use the graphic equalizer.

**Off  
(Default):** Do not use the graphic equalizer.

### Speaker Selection

Select whether to adjust tones for individual speakers or for all speakers.

<b>All:</b>	Adjust all speaker tones together.
<b>Left/Right (Default):</b>	Adjust the left and right speaker tones together.
<b>Each:</b>	Adjust the tone for each speaker.

### Adjust EQ

Adjust tonal balance for each frequency band. Adjust the speaker selected in "Speaker Selection".

1. Select the speaker.
2. Select the adjustment frequency band.  
63 Hz / 125 Hz / 250 Hz / 500 Hz / 1 kHz / 2 kHz / 4 kHz / 8 kHz / 16 kHz
3. Adjust the level.  
-20.0 dB - +6.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)



Front Dolby, Surround Dolby and Back Dolby speakers can only be set when 63 Hz/125 Hz/250 Hz/500 Hz/1 kHz.

## ■ Curve Copy

Copy the Flat correction curve created in the Audyssey® Setup.



"Curve Copy" is displayed after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.

## ■ Set Defaults

The "Graphic EQ" settings are returned to the default settings.

# Video

Make video-related settings.

## Picture Adjust

Picture quality can be adjusted.



- Can be set when the “Video Conversion” setting is “On”. (☞ p. 212)
- Can be set when “HDMI”, “COMP” or “VIDEO” is assigned for each input source. (☞ p. 219)
- “Contrast”, “Brightness”, “Saturation”, “Noise Reduction” and “Enhancer” can be set when “Picture Mode” is set to “Custom”.
- “Picture Adjust” settings are stored for each input source.
- “Picture Adjust” cannot be set when 4K signals are input.

### ■ Picture Mode

Select the desired picture mode according to the video content and your viewing environment.

**Standard:** The standard mode suited for most living room viewing environments.

**Movie:** A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room such as a theater room.

**Vivid:** A mode that makes graphic images for games, etc. brighter and more vivid.

**Streaming:** A mode suited for low bit rate video sources.

**ISF Day:** A mode suited for watching movies in a bright room during the day.

**ISF Night:** A mode suited for watching movies in a dark room at night.

**Custom:** Adjusts the picture quality manually.

**Off:** No picture quality adjustment is done with this unit.





- The two special adjustment modes, ISF Day and ISF Night, should be used by a certified technician to adjust the color calibration to match the installation conditions.

We recommend that the settings and adjustments be carried out by an ISF-certified technician.

- These settings can also be configured using "Picture Mode" in the option menu. (☞ p. 147)

- The default settings are as follows.

- For "Online Music" and "iPod/USB" input sources: Streaming
- For input sources other than "Online Music" and "iPod/USB": Off

## ■ Contrast

Adjust picture contrast.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

## ■ Brightness

Adjust picture brightness.

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)

## ■ Saturation

Adjust picture chroma level (color saturation).

-50 – +50 (Default : 0)



## ■ Noise Reduction

Reduce overall video noise.

**Low / Medium / High / Off** (Default : Off)

## ■ Enhancer

Emphasize picture sharpness.

**0 – +12** (Default : 0)

## HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

## NOTE

When "HDMI Pass Through" and "HDMI Control" is set to "On", it consumes more standby power. If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

## ■ Auto Lip Sync

Make automatic compensation for timing shift in audio and video output.

**On** (Default):  Correct automatically.

**Off:** Do not correct automatically.



## ■ HDMI Audio Out

Select HDMI audio output device.

<b>AVP (Default):</b>	Play back through speakers connected to power amp. (Audio is output from the PRE OUT connector on this unit.)
<b>TV:</b>	Play back through TV connected to the unit.



- When the HDMI control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting. ("HDMI control function" (☞ p. 166))
- When the power of this unit is on and "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV", audio is output as 2-channel from the HDMI OUT connector.

## ■ Video Output

Select the HDMI monitor connector to be used.

<b>Auto(Dual) (Default):</b>	The presence of a TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 or HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is detected automatically, and that TV connection is used.
<b>Monitor 1:</b>	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector is always used.
<b>Monitor 2:</b>	A TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is always used.



- If both the HDMI MONITOR1 and HDMI MONITOR2 connectors are connected and "Resolution" is set to "Auto", the signals are output with a resolution that is compatible with both TVs. When "Resolution" is not set to "Auto", video may not be output. In this case, set a resolution that is compatible with both TVs. (☞ p. 213)  
You can check which resolutions are compatible with your TV in "HDMI Monitor 1" and "HDMI Monitor 2". (☞ p. 269)
- This can be set by pressing HDMI OUT on the main unit.

## ■ Vertical Stretch

Sets whether video signals are vertically stretched or not.

**On:** Stretches video signals vertically.

**Off**  
(Default): Does not stretch video signals vertically.

### NOTE

“Vertical Stretch” can be set when “i/p Scaler” is set to anything other than “Off”.

(☞ p. 212)

## ■ HDMI Pass Through

Selects how this unit will transmit HDMI signals to the HDMI output in standby power mode.

**On**  
(Default): Transmits the selected HDMI input through the AV pre tuner's HDMI output when this unit is in standby power mode.

**Off:** No HDMI signals are transmitted through this unit's HDMI output in standby power mode.



## HDMI Control

You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.

**On:** Use HDMI control function.

**Off  
(Default):** Do not use HDMI control function.



- Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings.
- Refer to "HDMI control function" for more information about the HDMI control function. (☞ p. 166)

### NOTE

If the "HDMI Control" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

## Pass Through Source

Sets the HDMI connector that inputs HDMI signals when in standby.

**Last:** The most recently used input source will go into standby mode.

**CBL/SAT / DVD /  
Blu-ray / Game /  
AUX1 / AUX2 /  
Media Player / CD\***  
(Default : CBL/SAT):

Pass through the selected input source.

\* "Pass Through Source" can be set when any of the HDMI connectors is assigned to "CD" for the input source in the "Input Assign" setting. (☞ p. 218)



"Pass Through Source" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On" or "HDMI Pass Through" is set to "On".

## ■ TV Audio Switching

Sets automatic switching to the “TV Audio” input when a TV connected via HDMI sends an appropriate CEC control command to the AVP.

**On**  
(Default): Select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.

**Off:** Do not select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.



“TV Audio Switching” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”.

## ■ Power Off Control

Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.

**All**  
(Default): If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.

**Video:** With an input source being selected that is assigned either “HDMI”, “COMP” or “VIDEO”, when you turn the power of the TV off, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. (☞ p. 219)

**Off:** This unit does not link with power to a TV.



“Power Off Control” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”.

## Output Settings

Makes settings for video output.



- Can be set when "HDMI", "COMP" or "VIDEO" (☞ p. 219) is assigned for each input source.
- "Resolution", "Progressive Mode" and "Aspect Ratio" can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".
- "Output Settings" cannot be set when 4K signals are input.
- "Video Conversion", "i/p Scaler", "Resolution", "Progressive Mode" and "Aspect Ratio" settings are stored for each input source.

### ■ Video Mode

Configure the video processing method to match the type of video content.

#### Auto

(Default):

Process video automatically based on the HDMI content information.

#### Game:

Always process video for game content. Minimize the video delay when the video is delayed compared to the button operations on the controller of the game console.

#### Movie:

Perform image processing that is suitable for contents other than games.



If "Video Mode" is set to "Auto", the mode is switched according to the input contents.



## ■ Video Conversion

The input video signal is converted automatically in conjunction with the connected TV. (“Video conversion function” (☞ p. 312))

On (Default):	The input video signal is converted.
Off:	The input video signal is not converted.

## ■ i/p Scaler

Set the video input signal to be subjected to i/p scaler processing. i/p Scaler will convert the resolution of the input video signal to the value set in “Resolution”. (☞ p. 213)

### When the input source is set other than to “iPod/USB” and “Online Music”

Analog (Default):	Use i/p (interlace-to-progressive) scaler function for analog video signals.
Analog & HDMI:	Use i/p scaler function for analog and HDMI video signal.
HDMI:	Use i/p scaler function for HDMI video signals.
Off:	Do not use i/p scaler function.



## When the input source is set to “iPod/USB” and “Online Music”

<b>On (Default):</b>	Use i/p scaler function.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use i/p scaler function.



- “Analog & HDMI” can be set for input sources for which an HDMI input connector is assigned.
- Which items can be set depend on the input source assigned to each input connector.
- This function is not effective when the input signal is “x.v.Color”, 3D, sYCC601 color, Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color or computer resolutions.

## Resolution

Set the output resolution. You can set “Resolution” separately for HDMI output of the analog video input and HDMI input.

**Auto**  
(Default):  
The resolution supported by the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR OUT connector is detected automatically and the appropriate output resolution is set.

**480p/576p / 1080i /  
720p / 1080p /  
1080p:24Hz /  
4K / 4K(60/50) :**

Set the output resolution.



- When “i/p Scaler” is set to “Analog & HDMI”, the resolution of both the analog video input signal and HDMI input signal can be set. (☞ p. 212)
- When set to “1080p:24Hz”, you can enjoy film-like pictures for film sources (in 24 Hz). For video sources and mixed sources, we recommend setting the resolution to “1080p”.
- It is not possible to convert a 50 Hz signal into 1080p/24Hz. It is output at a resolution of 1080p/50Hz.



## ■ Progressive Mode

Set an appropriate progressive conversion mode for the source video signal.

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	The video signal is automatically detected and the appropriate mode is set.
<b>Video:</b>	Select mode suitable for video playback.
<b>Video and Film:</b>	Select mode suitable for video and 30-frame film material playback.



This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".  
(☞ p. 212)

## ■ Aspect Ratio

Set the aspect ratio for the video signals output to the HDMI.

<b>16:9</b> (Default):	Output at 16:9 aspect ratio.
---------------------------	------------------------------

<b>4:3 :</b>	Output at 4:3 aspect ratio with black bars on the sides of a 16:9 TV screen. (except for 480p/576p output)
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------



This item can be set when "i/p Scaler" is set to anything other than "Off".  
(☞ p. 212)

## Analog Video Out

Assigns the zone that uses the COMPONENT VIDEO MONITOR OUT and the VIDEO MONITOR OUT connectors.

### ■ ZONE

---

Assigns the COMPONENT VIDEO

**MAIN ZONE** (Default) : MONITOR OUT and the VIDEO MONITOR OUT connector to MAIN ZONE.

---

Assigns the COMPONENT VIDEO

**ZONE3** : MONITOR OUT and the VIDEO MONITOR OUT connector to ZONE3.

---



## On Screen Display

Select the on-screen display user interface preferences.

### ■ Volume

Sets where to display the volume level.

**Bottom**  
(Default):      Display at the bottom.

**Top:**      Display at the top.

**Off:**      Turn display off.



When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed text (closed captioning) or movie subtitles are present, set to "Top".

### ■ Info

Displays status of operation temporarily when the sound mode is changed, or input source is switched.

**On**  
(Default):      Shows the volume display.

**Off:**      Does not show the volume display.

### ■ Now Playing

Sets the display time for the playback display when the input source is "Online Music", "iPod/USB", "Bluetooth" or "HD Radio".

**Always On**  
(Default):      Show display continuously.

**Auto Off:**      Show display for 30 seconds after operation.

## TV Format

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

### Format

**NTSC**  
(Default): Select NTSC output.

**PAL:** Select PAL output.



“Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.

1. Press and hold the main unit’s STATUS and ZONE SELECT at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
“\*Video Format <NTSC>” appears on the display.
2. Use the main unit’s ▲ or ▼ and set the video signal format.
3. Press the main unit’s ENTER to complete the setting.

#### NOTE

When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.



# Inputs

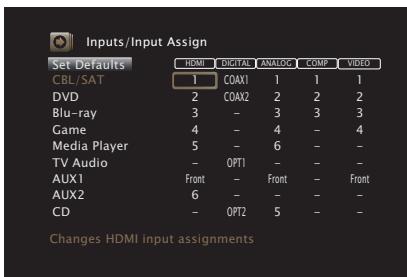
Perform settings related to input source playback.

You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

## Input Assign

By making connections as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit, you can just press one of the input source select buttons to easily play back audio or video from a connected device.

Please change the assignment of the HDMI input connector, digital audio input connector, analog audio input connector, component video input connector and video input connector when connecting an input source that differs from that printed to the audio/video input connectors of this unit.



By default, each item is set as follows.

Input source	Input connector				
	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	COMP	VIDEO
CBL/SAT	1	COAX1	1	1	1
DVD	2	COAX2	2	2	2
Blu-ray	3	-	3	3	3
Game	4	-	4	-	4
Media Player	5	-	6	-	-
TV Audio	-	OPT1	-	-	-
AUX1	Front	-	Front	-	Front
AUX2	6	-	-	-	-
CD	-	OPT2	5	-	-

### □ TV set top box/satellite users please note

When using the digital audio output on a TV/satellite box:

To play the video signal assigned to "HDMI" combined with the audio signal assigned at "Input Assign" - "DIGITAL", you will also need to select "Digital" in the "Input Mode". ( p. 221)

## HDMI

Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 /** Assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.  
**Front:**

**- :** Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.



When "HDMI Control" is set to "On" in the menu, "HDMI" cannot be assigned to "TV Audio". (☞ p. 209)

## DIGITAL

Set this to change the digital audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**COAX1 (Coaxial) /** Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

**COAX2 /** Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

**OPT1 (Optical) /** Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

**OPT2:** Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

**- :** Do not assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

## ANALOG

Set this to change the analog audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 /** Assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.  
**Front / XLR:**

**- :** Do not assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.

## COMP (Component video)

Set this to change the component video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**1 / 2 / 3:** Assign the component video input connector to the selected input source.

**- :** Do not assign a component video input connector to the selected input source.

## VIDEO

Set this to change the composite video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

**1 / 2 / 3 / 4 /** Assign the video input connector to the selected input source.  
**Front:**

**- :** Do not assign a video input connector to the selected input source.

## Set Defaults

The "Input Assign" settings are returned to the default settings.

## Source Rename

Change the display name for input source.

This is convenient when the name of your device and the input source name of this unit are different. You can change the name to suit your needs. When the renaming is completed, the name is displayed on this unit's display and on the menu screen.

CBL/SAT / DVD / Blu-ray / Game /  
AUX1 / AUX2 / Media Player / CD /  
TV Audio / Phono: Change the display name for input source.

**Set Defaults:** The Source Rename settings are returned to the default settings.



Up to 12 characters can be input. For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (☞ p. 188).

## Hide Sources

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

**Show** Use this source.  
(Default):

**Hide:** Do not use this source.

## Source Level

This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source's audio input.

Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

### ■ Source Level

When the input source is set to "iPod/USB", "Online Music", "Bluetooth" or "HD Radio"

-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)

### ■ Analog Inputs / Digital Inputs

When the input source is set other than to "iPod/USB", "Online Music", "Bluetooth" or "HD Radio"

-12dB – +12dB (Default : 0dB)



- The analog input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "ANALOG" is assigned at "Input Assign". (☞ p. 218)
- The digital input level can be adjusted independently for input sources for which "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign". (☞ p. 218)
- "Source Level" settings are stored for each input source.

## Input Select

Set the audio input mode and decode mode of each input source.

The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.



"Input Select" settings are stored for each input source.

### ■ Input Mode

Set the audio input modes for the different input sources.

It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto".

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.
<b>HDMI:</b>	Play only signals from HDMI input.
<b>Digital:</b>	Play only signals from digital audio input.
<b>Analog:</b>	Play only signals from analog audio input.
<b>7.1CH IN:</b>	Only signals input from the 7.1CH IN connector will be played back.



- When digital signals are properly input, the indicator lights on the display. If the indicator does not light, check "Input Assign" and the connections. ( p. 218)
- If "HDMI Control" is set to "On" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR 1 connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV Audio" is fixed to ARC.
- The sound mode cannot be set if the input mode is set to "7.1CH IN".

### ■ Decode Mode

Set the audio decode mode for input source.

It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto". But we recommend changing it to "PCM" or "DTS" if the start of the source is clipped or noise occurs.

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Detect type of digital audio input signal and decode and play automatically.
<b>PCM:</b>	Decode and play only PCM input signals.
<b>DTS:</b>	Decode and play only DTS input signals.



This item can be set for input sources for which "HDMI" or "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign" ( p. 218).

### Upgrade (Auro-3D)

<b>Auro-3D:</b>	The input signal is decoded using an Auro-3D decoder.
-----------------	-------------------------------------------------------



- This item can always be set on models supporting Auro-3D.
- The sound modes you can select are Auro-3D or Auro-2D Surround when the "Decode Mode" setting is "Auro-3D".

# Speakers

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called "Audyssey® Setup".

You do not have to perform Audyssey® Setup when you have already performed "Speaker Calibration" in "Setup Assistant".

To set up the speakers manually, use "Manual Setup" on the menu. (☞ p. 245)

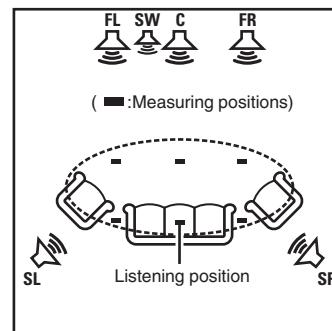
## Audyssey® Setup

To perform measurement, place the Sound calibration microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

When measuring the second and subsequent positions, install the Sound calibration microphone within 2 ft (60 cm) of the first measurement position (main listening position).



If you perform the Audyssey® setup, the Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ functions are enabled. (☞ p. 198 - 200)



FL Front speaker (L)

FR Front speaker (R)

C Center speaker

SW Subwoofer

SL Surround speaker (L)

SR Surround speaker (R)

## ■ About the main listening position

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Setup, place the Sound calibration microphone in the main listening position.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

## ■ About Audyssey Sub EQ HT™

Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ makes the integration of dual subwoofers seamless by first compensating for any level and delay differences between the two subwoofers and then applying Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to both subwoofers together.

To run Audyssey Sub EQ HT™ you must select "Measure (2 spkrs)" in "Channel Select". (☞ p. 225).

### NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- Do not stand between the speakers and Sound calibration microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. Also, install the Sound calibration microphone at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from the wall. Failure to do so will result in inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, audible test tones will come from the speakers and subwoofer(s), but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in the room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating VOLUME ▲▼ on the remote control unit or VOLUME on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey® Setup.



## Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)

Preparation



Measurement



Calculation & Store



Check



Finish

- 1** Attach the Sound calibration microphone to the supplied microphone stand or own tripod and install it at the main listening position.

When installing the Sound calibration microphone, point the tip of the microphone toward the ceiling and adjust the height to match the height of the ears of a listener in a seated position.

- 2** If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.

When using a subwoofer with a direct mode

Set the direct mode to "On" and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

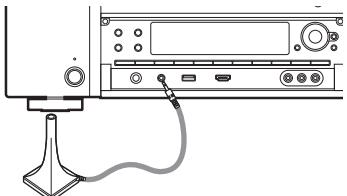
When using a subwoofer without a direct mode

Make the following settings:

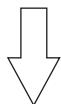
- Volume : 12 o'clock position
- Crossover frequency : Maximum/Highest Frequency
- Low pass filter : Off
- Standby mode : Off



### 3 Connect the Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



When the Sound calibration microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



### 4 Select "Start", then press ENTER.

Audyssey® Setup can also make the following settings.

- **Amp Assign**

The signals output from the SURROUND BACK, HEIGHT1 and HEIGHT2 PRE OUT connectors can be switched in accordance with your speaker environment. (Amp Assign ( p. 233))

- **Channel Select**

If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers and subwoofer.

### 5 Follow the instructions on the screen display and press "Next" to proceed further.

## 6 When the following screen is displayed, select “Begin Test” and then press ENTER.

Start the measurement of the first position.



- Measurement requires several minutes.

### NOTE

If “Caution!” is displayed on TV screen:

- Go to “Error messages” (☞ p. 230). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.
- If the volume level for the subwoofer is not appropriate, an error message is displayed. See “Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust” (☞ p. 231).

## 7 When the detected speaker is displayed, select “Next” and then press ENTER.



## 8 Move the Sound calibration microphone to position 2, select “Continue”, then press ENTER.

The measurement of the second position starts.

Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.



To skip measuring the second and subsequent listening position, press  $\triangleleft$  to select “Complete” and press ENTER to proceed to step 11.

### Stopping Audyssey® Setup

- ① Press BACK to display the popup screen.
- ② Press  $\triangleleft$  to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

## 9 Repeat step 8, measuring positions 3 to 8.

## 10 Select “Continue”, then press ENTER.



Start the analysis and storage of the measurement results.

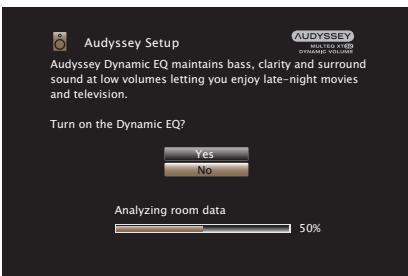
- Analysis takes several minutes to complete.  
The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

### NOTE

When the measurement results are being saved, make sure the power is not turned off.

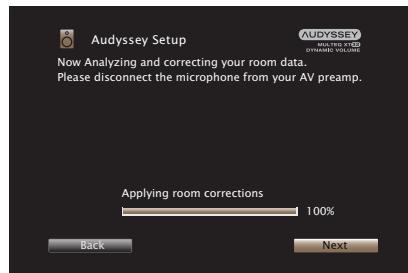
## 11 Perform the settings for Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.

The following screen is displayed during the analysis. Configure the settings as preferred.



- Dynamic EQ corrects the frequency response in consideration of the audio characteristics of the room and human hearing ability so that sound can be heard even at low volume.  
This is recommended when using the unit with the volume turned down, e.g. when enjoying a movie or TV program in the middle of the night.
- Dynamic Volume adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

## 12 When the analysis and storage ends, unplug the Sound calibration microphone from the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit and then press “Next”.



## 13 Select “Details” and press ENTER to verify the measurement results.

- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.

### NOTE

Do not change the speaker connection or subwoofer volume after Audyssey® Setup. If these are changed, run Audyssey® Setup again in order to configure the optimum equalizer settings.



## Error messages

An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

Examples	Error details	Measures
No speakers found.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sound calibration microphone is not detected.</li><li>• Not all speakers could be detected.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Connect the included Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.</li><li>• Check the speaker connections.</li></ul>
Ambient noise is too high or level is too low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• There is too much noise in the room.</li><li>• Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away.</li><li>• Perform again when the surroundings are quieter.</li><li>• Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing.</li><li>• Adjust the subwoofer's volume.</li></ul>
Front R : None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The displayed speaker could not be detected.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the connections of the displayed speaker.</li></ul>
Front R : Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the polarity of the displayed speaker.</li><li>• For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press ▶ to select "Ignore", then press ENTER.</li></ul>



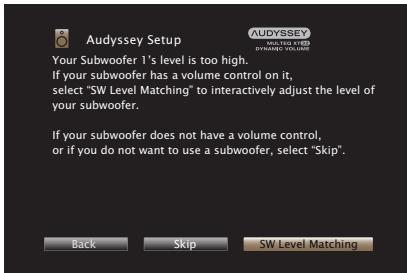
## ■ Subwoofer level error message and how to adjust

The optimal level of each subwoofer channel for Audyssey® Setup measurement is 75 dB.

During subwoofer level measurement, an error message is displayed when one level of subwoofers is outside the 72 – 78 dB range.

When using a subwoofer with built-in amplifier (active type), adjust the subwoofer volume so that the subwoofer level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.

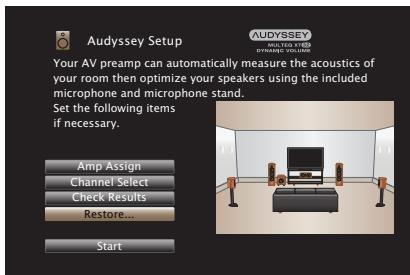
### [ Error message ]



- 1** Select “SW Level Matching” and then press ENTER.
- 2** Adjust the volume control on your subwoofer so that the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range.
- 3** When the measured level is within the 72 to 78 dB range, select “Next” and then press ENTER.
  - If you use two subwoofers, the second subwoofer’s adjustment will be started. Repeat the operation from step 2, 3.

## Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings

If you set “Restore...” to “Restore”, you can return to Audyssey® Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT32) even when you have changed each setting manually.



# Manual Setup

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.

- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Setup, you will no longer be able to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® or Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. (☞ p. 198 - 200)
- This unit can be used without changing “Manual Setup” settings. Please set if necessary.

## Amp Assign

You can change the Pre Amplifier assignment according to your speaker system.

### ■ Assign Mode

Select how to use the Pre Amplifier.

You need to configure the detailed settings for the speaker configuration in accordance with the selected mode. Select Assign Mode configure the corresponding detailed settings.

- All Pre Amplifiers for this unit are used for MAIN ZONE.

#### 11.1ch

(Default):

The speakers play back up to 11.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode. (☞ p. 234)

- The Pre Amplifier of this unit is assigned to 2-channels for creating bi-amp connections with the front speaker.

#### 9.1ch (Bi-Amp):

The speakers play back up to 9.1-channels in accordance with the input signal and sound mode. (☞ p. 237)



- 9.1ch + Front B:**
- The Pre Amplifier of this unit is assigned to 2 channels for connecting to the second front speaker.
  - You can switch between the desired combination of front speakers A and front speakers B. (☞ p. 240)  
Switch the front speaker using the “Front Speaker” setting. (☞ p. 240)
- 
- Dolby Atmos :**
- Setting to assign the Pre amplifiers within this unit for the speaker layout suitable for Dolby Atmos playback. (☞ p. 243)
  - When using the front height, rear height or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers for Dolby Atmos playback, set “Assign Mode” to either “11.1ch” or “9.1ch”.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

- Auro-3D:**
- Setting to assign the power amplifiers with this unit for the speaker layout suitable for Auro-3D playback. (☞ p. 244)  
For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.  
When using the rear height speakers, set “Assign Mode” to “9.1ch” or “11.1ch”.

**■ Detailed settings when “Assign Mode” is set to “11.1ch”**

When “Assign Mode” is set to “11.1ch”, set the following items.

**□ Height Speakers**

Select the number of the height speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

- |                                        |                                                             |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>2 Height Speakers</b><br>(Default): | Uses a set of (two) height speakers.                        |
| <b>4 Height Speakers :</b>             | Uses two sets of (four) height speakers.                    |
| <b>Using Dolby Speakers :</b>          | Select when the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are connected. |

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

- 5 Height Speakers:** Uses five height speakers \*

\* If “5 Height Speakers” is selected, connect the Top Surround speaker to the Subwoofer 2 terminal.



## □ Layout

Select the type of the height speakers used.

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “2 Height Speakers”】

Select the height channel used.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1
Front Height (Default)	Front Height
Top Front	Top Front
Top Middle	Top Middle
Top Rear	Top Rear
Rear Height	Rear Height

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “4 Height Speakers”】

Select the height channels used for the two pair.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
Front Height & Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height
Top Front & Top Rear (Default)	Top Front	Top Rear
Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height



**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items		HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
Front Height & Surr. Height		Front Height	Surround Height
Front Height & Rear Height		Front Height	Rear Height *

\* For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.

**[When "Height Speakers" is set to "5 Height Speakers"]**

Select the height channel used.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items		HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2	SUBWOOFER2
Front Height & Surr. Height		Front Height	Surround Height	Top Surround
Front Height & Rear Height		Front Height	Rear Height *	Top Surround

\* For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.

**[When "Height Speakers" is set to "Using Dolby Speakers"]**

Select the height channels used for the two pair.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items		HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
Front Dolby (Default)		Front Dolby	Not assigned.
Surround Dolby		Surround Dolby	Not assigned.
Back Dolby		Back Dolby	Not assigned.
Front Dolby & Top Rear		Front Dolby	Top Rear
Front Dolby & Rear Height		Front Dolby	Rear Height
Front Height & Surr. Dolby		Front Height	Surround Dolby
Front Height & Back Dolby		Front Height	Back Dolby
Top Front & Surr. Dolby		Top Front	Surround Dolby
Top Front & Back Dolby		Top Front	Back Dolby
Front Dolby & Surr. Dolby		Front Dolby	Surround Dolby
Front Dolby & Back Dolby		Front Dolby	Back Dolby



## ■ Detailed settings when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch (Bi-Amp)”

When “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch (Bi-Amp)”, set the following items.

### □ Pre-out for Bi-Amp

Select the PRE OUT connectors used for the bi-amp connection of front speakers.

<b>FRONT WIDE</b> (Default):	Make the bi-amp connection by using the FRONT PRE OUT connectors and FRONT WIDE PRE OUT connectors.
<b>HEIGHT1:</b>	Make the bi-amp connection by using the FRONT PRE OUT connectors and HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors.
<b>SURROUND BACK:</b>	Make the bi-amp connection by using the FRONT PRE OUT connectors and SURROUND BACK PRE OUT connectors.

### □ Height Speakers

Select the number of the height speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

<b>None:</b>	Uses no height speakers.
<b>2 Height Speakers</b> (Default):	Uses a set of (two) height speakers.
<b>4 Height Speakers:</b>	Uses two sets of (four) height speakers.
<b>Using Dolby Speakers:</b>	Select when the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are connected.



## □ Layout

Select the type of the height speakers used.

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “2 Height Speakers”】

Select the height channel used.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1
Front Height (Default)	Front Height
Top Front	Top Front
Top Middle	Top Middle
Top Rear	Top Rear
Rear Height	Rear Height

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “4 Height Speakers”】

Select the height channels used for the two pair.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
Front Height & Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height
Top Front & Top Rear (Default)	Top Front	Top Rear
Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height



**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
<b>Front Height &amp; Surr. Height</b>	Front Height	Surround Height
<b>Front Height &amp; Rear Height</b>	Front Height	Rear Height *

\* For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “Using Dolby Speakers”】

Select the height channels used for the two pair.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
<b>Front Dolby</b> (Default)	Front Dolby	Not assigned.
<b>Surround Dolby</b>	Surround Dolby	Not assigned.
<b>Back Dolby *</b>	Back Dolby	Not assigned.
<b>Front Dolby &amp; Top Rear</b>	Front Dolby	Top Rear
<b>Front Dolby &amp; Rear Height</b>	Front Dolby	Rear Height
<b>Front Height &amp; Surr. Dolby</b>	Front Height	Surround Dolby
<b>Top Front &amp; Surr. Dolby</b>	Top Front	Surround Dolby
<b>Front Dolby &amp; Surr. Dolby</b>	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby

\* When “Pre-out for Bi-Amp” setting is “FRONT WIDE”, you can make this setting.



## ■ Detailed settings when “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch + Front B”

When “Assign Mode” is set to “9.1ch + Front B”, set the following items.

### □ Pre-out for Front B

Select the PRE OUT connectors used for the front speakers of the second unit.

<b>FRONT WIDE (Default):</b>	Connect the front speakers of the second unit to the FRONT WIDE PRE OUT connectors.
<b>HEIGHT1:</b>	Connect the front speakers of the second unit to the HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors.
<b>SURROUND BACK:</b>	Connect the front speakers of the second unit to the SURROUND BACK PRE OUT connectors.

### □ Height Speakers

Select the number of the height speakers used in MAIN ZONE.

<b>None:</b>	Uses no height speakers.
<b>2 Height Speakers (Default):</b>	Uses a set of (two) height speakers.
<b>4 Height Speakers:</b>	Uses two sets of (four) height speakers.
<b>Using Dolby Speakers:</b>	Select when the Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers are connected.



## □ Layout

Select the type of the height speakers used.

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “2 Height Speakers”】

Select the height channel used.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1
Front Height (Default)	Front Height
Top Front	Top Front
Top Middle	Top Middle
Top Rear	Top Rear
Rear Height	Rear Height

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “4 Height Speakers”】

Select the height channels used for the two pair.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
Front Height & Top Middle	Front Height	Top Middle
Front Height & Top Rear	Front Height	Top Rear
Front Height & Rear Height	Front Height	Rear Height
Top Front & Top Rear (Default)	Top Front	Top Rear
Top Front & Rear Height	Top Front	Rear Height
Top Middle & Rear Height	Top Middle	Rear Height



**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
<b>Front Height &amp; Surr. Height</b>	Front Height	Surround Height
<b>Front Height &amp; Rear Height</b>	Front Height	Rear Height *

\* For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.

【When “Height Speakers” is set to “Using Dolby Speakers”】

Select the height channels used for the two pair.

AUDIO OUT connectors Select items	HEIGHT1	HEIGHT2
<b>Front Dolby</b> (Default)	Front Dolby	Not assigned.
<b>Surround Dolby *</b>	Surround Dolby	Not assigned.
<b>Back Dolby</b>	Back Dolby	Not assigned.
<b>Front Dolby &amp; Top Rear</b>	Front Dolby	Top Rear
<b>Front Dolby &amp; Rear Height</b>	Front Dolby	Rear Height
<b>Front Height &amp; Surr. Dolby</b>	Front Height	Surround Dolby
<b>Top Front &amp; Surr. Dolby</b>	Top Front	Surround Dolby
<b>Front Dolby &amp; Surr. Dolby</b>	Front Dolby	Surround Dolby

\* When “Pre-out for Front B” setting is “FRONT WIDE”, you can make this setting.



## ■ Detailed settings when “Assign Mode” is set to “Dolby Atmos”

When “Assign Mode” is set to “Dolby Atmos”, set the following items.

### □ Layout

Select the speaker layout for Dolby Atmos playback.

**7.1ch + 4 Height:** This is a layout that adds the top front and top rear speakers to the 7.1 channel layout which includes the surround back channel. Connect the top front speakers to the HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors and the top rear speakers to the HEIGHT2 UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connectors or FRONT WIDE/HIGHT2 BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connectors.

**7.1ch + 2 Height  
(Default):** This is a layout that adds the top middle speakers to the 7.1 channel layout including the surround back channel. Connect the top middle speakers to the HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors.

### 5.1ch + 4 Height:

This is a layout that adds the top front and top rear speakers to the basic 5.1 channel layout. Connect the top front speakers to the HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors and the top rear speakers to the HEIGHT2 UNBALANCED RCA PRE OUT connectors or FRONT WIDE/HIGHT2 BALANCED XLR PRE OUT connectors.

### 5.1ch + 2 Height:

This is a layout that adds the top middle speakers to the basic 5.1 channel layout. Connect the top middle speakers to the HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors.



When using the front height, rear height or Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers for Dolby Atmos playback, set “Assign Mode” to either “11.1ch” or “9.1ch”.

## Upgrade (Auro-3D)

### ■ Detailed setting when “Assign Mode” is set to “Auro-3D”

When “Assign Mode” is set to “Auro-3D”, set the following items.

#### Layout

Select the speaker layout for Auro-3D playback

Auro 9.1ch (Default):	This is a layout that adds the front height and surround height speakers to the basic 5.1 channel layout. Connect the front height speakers to the HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors and the surround height speakers to the HEIGHT2 PRE OUT connectors.
Auro 10.1ch:	This is a layout that adds the front height, surround height and top surround speakers to the basic 5.1 channel layout. Connect the front height speakers to the HEIGHT1 PRE OUT connectors and the surround height speakers to the HEIGHT2 PRE OUT connectors. And connect the top surround speaker to SUBWOOFER 2 PRE OUT connector. In this setting, you can't use the second subwoofer.



For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.

When using the rear height speakers, set “Assign Mode” to “9.1ch” or “11.1ch”.

### ■ View Terminal Config.

This shows how to connect the PRE OUT connectors for your “Amp Assign” setting on the menu screen.

## Speaker Config.

Select whether or not speakers are present, playback capacity for low bass frequencies and speaker size.

### ■ Front

Set the front speaker size.

<b>Large</b> (Default):	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small:</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.



- When "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large".
- When "Front" is set to "Small", you cannot set speakers other than "Front" to "Large".

### ■ Center

Set the presence and size of the center speaker.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small</b> (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when a center speaker is not connected.

### ■ Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

<b>2 spkrs:</b>	Use two subwoofers.
<b>1 spkr</b> (Default):	Use only one subwoofer.
<b>None:</b>	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.



When "Subwoofer" is set to "None" and you set "Front" to "Small", "Subwoofer" is automatically set to "1 spkr".

### ■ Surround

Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small</b> (Default):	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround speakers are not connected.



When "Surround" is set to "None", "Surr. Back", "Front Wide", "Surround Dolby" and "Back Dolby" are automatically set to "None".

## Surr. Back

Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.
<b>2 spkrs (Default):</b>	Use two surround back speakers.
<b>1 spkr:</b>	Use only one surround back speaker. Connect to the L connector to SURROUND BACK when this setting is selected.



If "Surr. Back" is "None" or "1 spkr", "Back Dolby" is automatically "None".

## Front Wide

Set the presence and size of the front wide speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front wide speakers are not connected.

## Front Height

Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front height speakers are not connected.

## ■ Top Front

Set the presence and size of the top front speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top front speakers are not connected.

## ■ Top Middle

Set the presence and size of the top middle speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top middle speakers are not connected.

## ■ Top Rear

Set the presence and size of the top rear speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top rear speakers are not connected.

## ■ Rear Height

Set the presence and size of the rear height speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the rear height speakers are not connected.



## ■ Front Dolby

Set the presence and size of the front Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front Dolby speakers are not connected.

## ■ Surround Dolby

Set the presence and size of the surround Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround Dolby speakers are not connected.

## ■ Back Dolby

Set the presence and size of the back Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the back Dolby speakers are not connected.



When speakers for which you assigned Height1 in "Amp Assign" are set to "None", "None" is automatically set for Height2.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)****■ Surround Height**

Set the presence and size of the surround height speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround height speakers are not connected.



When "Front Height" is set to "None", "Surround Height" is automatically set to "None".

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)****■ Top Surround**

Set the presence and size of the top surround speaker.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top surround speaker is not connected.



When "Surround Height" or "Rear Height" is set to "None", "Top Surround" is automatically set to "None".

## Distances

Set distance from listening position to speakers.

Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.

### Unit

Set the unit of distance.

Feet (Default)

Meters

### Step

Set the minimum variable width of the distance.

1 ft (Default) / 0.1 ft

0.1 m / 0.01 m

### Set Defaults

The "Distances" settings are returned to the default settings.

## Set the distance

0.0 ft – 60.0 ft / 0.00 m – 18.00 m



- The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the "Amp Assign" and "Speaker Config." settings. (☞ p. 233, 245)
- Default settings:  
Front L / Front R / F. Height L / F. Height R / F. Wide L / F. Wide R / Center / Subwoofer 1 / Subwoofer 2: 12.0 ft (3.60 m)  
Speakers other than the above: 10.0 ft (3.00 m)
- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).

## Levels

Set the volume of the test tone to be the same at the listening position when it is output from each speaker.

### ■ Test Tone Start

A test tone is output from the selected speaker.

While listening to the test tone, adjust the volume output from the selected speaker.

**-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)**



- The set “Levels” are reflected in all sound modes.
- If you wish to adjust the channel level for each input source, carry out the settings in “Channel Level Adjust”. (☞ p. 144)
- When headphones are connected to the PHONES connector on this unit, you cannot set “Levels”.

### ■ Set Defaults

The “Levels” settings are returned to the default settings.

## Crossovers

Set in accordance with the lower limit frequency of the base frequencies that can be played back through each speaker. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.

### ■ Speaker Selection

Selects how to set the crossover frequency.

All (Default):	Sets the same crossover frequency for all speakers.
Individual:	Selects the crossover points for each speaker individually.

### ■ Set the crossover frequency

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz /  
200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 80 Hz)



- “Crossovers” can be set when the “Subwoofer Mode” setting is “LFE+Main”, or when you have a speaker that is set to “Small”. (☞ p. 253)
- The default crossover frequency is “80 Hz”, which will work best with the widest variety of speakers. We recommend setting to a higher frequency than the crossover frequency when small speakers are used. For example, set to “250 Hz” when the frequency range of the speakers is 250 Hz – 20 kHz.
- Sound below the crossover frequency is cut off from the output of the speakers set in “Small”. This cut off bass frequency is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.
- The speakers that can be set when “Individual” is selected differ depending on the “Subwoofer Mode” setting. (☞ p. 253)
  - When “LFE” is selected, speakers set to “Small” at “Speaker Config.” can be set. If the speakers are set to “Large”, “Full Band” is displayed and the setting cannot be made. (☞ p. 245)
  - When “LFE+Main” is selected, speakers can be set regardless of the “Speaker Config.” setting. (☞ p. 245)

## Bass

Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback.

### ■ Subwoofer Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

<b>LFE</b> (Default):	The low range signal of the channel set to "Small" speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.
<b>LFE+Main:</b>	The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.



- "Subwoofer Mode" can be set when "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to other than "None". ( p. 245)
- Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass.
- If "Speaker Config." - "Front" and "Center" are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode. Select "LFE+Main" if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer.  
( p. 245)

### ■ LPF for LFE

Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency (low pass filter point) of the subwoofer.

80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz /  
200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 120 Hz)

## Front Speaker

Set the front speaker A/B to use for every sound mode.

**A**  
(Default): Front speaker A is used.

**B :** Front speaker B is used.

**A+B :** Both front speakers A and B are used.



This can be set when "Assign Mode" is set to "9.1ch + Front B". ( p. 233)

## 2ch Playback

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

### ■ Setting

Select the method for setting the speakers used in the 2-channel direct and stereo playback modes.

**Auto**  
(Default): The settings in "Speakers" are applied. ( p. 222)

**Manual:** Set the speakers for 2-channel playback. Make the following settings:

## ■ Front

Set the size of the front speakers for 2-channel playback.

**Large**  
(Default): Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.

**Small:** Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.



When "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to "None", "Large" is automatically set. (☞ p. 245)

## ■ Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

**Yes**  
(Default): Use a subwoofer.

**No:** Select when a subwoofer is not connected.



When "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu is set to "None", No is automatically set. (☞ p. 245) If the "Front" setting is "Small", the setting is automatically "Yes".

## ■ SW Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

**LFE**  
(Default): When "2ch Playback" - "Front" is set to "Large", only LFE signals are output from the subwoofer. Also, when "2ch Playback" - "Front" is set to "Small", the front channel low range signals are added to the LFE signals and output from the subwoofer.

**LFE+Main:** The front channel low range signal is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.



This can be set when "2ch Playback" - "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes".

## ■ Crossover

Set the maximum frequency of the bass signal output from each channel to the subwoofer.

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz /  
200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 80 Hz)



- This can be set when "2ch Playback"- "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes".
- When "2ch Playback"- "Front" is set to "Large" and "SW Mode" is set to LFE, "Full Band" is displayed and this cannot be set.

## ■ Distance FL/Distance FR

Set distance from main listening position to speaker.

0.0ft – 60.0ft (Default : 12.0ft) /  
0.00m – 18.00m (Default : 3.60m)



Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).

## ■ Level FL/Level FR

Adjust the level of each channel.

-12.0dB – +12.0dB (Default : 0.0dB)

# Network

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings.

If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set “DHCP” to “On”. (Use the default setting.) This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN). When assigning an IP address to each device manually, you need to assign an IP address to this unit using the “IP Address” settings, and enter information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask, etc.

## Information

Display network information.

Friendly Name / Connection / SSID / DHCP / IP Address / MAC Address



MAC Address is required to create a vTuner account.

## Connection

Choose whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.

When connecting to the network using wired LAN, select “Wired (Ethernet)” after connecting a LAN cable,

When connecting to the network using wireless LAN, select “Wireless (Wi-Fi)” and configure the “Wi-Fi Setup”.

### ■ Connect Using

Select the method for connecting to the home network (LAN).

**Wired (Ethernet):** Use a LAN cable to connect to a network.

**Wireless (Wi-Fi):** Use the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) function to connect to a network.



You can disable the Wi-Fi function of this unit by configuring the following settings.

1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE SELECT at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
“\*Video Format <NTSC>” appears on the display.
2. Use the main unit's ▽ to display “\*Wired LAN <Unlock>”.
3. Use the main unit's ▲ or ▾ to select “<Lock>”.
4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

## Wi-Fi Setup

Connect to a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router.

The router can be connected in the following ways. Select the connection method to suit your home environment.

### Scan Networks

Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of possible networks shown on the TV screen.

1. Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of wireless networks.  
Select "Rescan" if the network cannot be found.
2. Enter your password and select "OK".

### Use iOS Device

Use your iOS device (iPhone/iPod/iPad) to connect to the network. By connecting your iOS device to this unit, the unit can be automatically connected to the same network as your device.

This unit can be connected to your iOS device in two ways, using a USB cable and using Wi-Fi.

#### When connecting using Wi-Fi

1. Select "Wireless connection" on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router and select "Marantz AV8802" from "SET UP NEW AIRPLAY SPEAKER..." at the bottom of the Wi-Fi configuration screen of your iOS device.
3. Tap "Next" on the screen of the iOS device.



The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS7 or later.

#### When using a USB cable

1. Select "USB cable" on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) and connect it to the USB port on the front panel using a USB cable.
3. Select "Connect" on the TV screen.
4. Tap "Allow" when the connection message appears on the screen of your iOS device.



The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS5 or later.

## ■ WPS Router

Use a WPS-compatible router to connect.

There are two ways to connect, using the push button method or the PIN code method. Select the connection method to match your router.

### □ When connecting using the push button method

1. Select “Push Button” on the TV screen.
2. Switch to the WPS mode by pressing the WPS button of the router you wish to connect to.
  - The time for pressing the button varies depending on the router.
3. Select “Connect” on the TV screen within 2 minutes.

### □ When connecting using the PIN code method

1. Select “PIN” on the TV screen.
2. Register the PIN code of the unit in the router.

## ■ Manual

Enter the name (SSID) and password of the network you wish to connect to.

1. Set the following items.

**SSID:** Input the name of the wireless network (SSID).

**Security:** Select the encryption method according to the encryption setting of the access point you are using.

**Password:** Input the password.

Select the Default Key.

**Default Key:** When connecting to a “WEP” encrypted network, “Default Key” menu is displayed.

2. Select “Connect” at the end of the setting.



The wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) settings of this unit can also be configured from a PC or tablet that supports wireless LAN connection.

When using a device that has a firmware version of iOS7 or later, “When connecting using Wi-Fi” (☞ p. 258) in “Use iOS Device”.

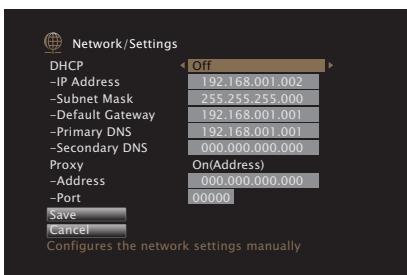
1. Press and hold the DIMMER and ZONE SELECT buttons on the main unit for at least 3 seconds when the power of the unit is on.
2. Connect the wireless LAN of the PC or tablet used to “Marantz AV8802” when the message “Connect your Wi-Fi device to Wi-Fi network called “Marantz AV8802”” appears in the display.
3. Start up the browser and enter “192.168.1.16” in the URL.
4. Use the browser to enter the settings, select “Connect” and then exit the settings.



## Settings

Configure the proxy settings and IP address.

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), the information required for network connection such as the IP address will be automatically configured since the DHCP function is set to "On" in the default settings of this unit.
- Set up the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway and DNS server information only when assigning a fixed IP address or when connecting to a network without DHCP function.
- Configure the proxy settings when using a proxy server to connect to the Internet.



### DHCP

Selects how to connect to the network.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Configure the network settings automatically from your router.
<b>Off:</b>	Configure the network settings manually.

### IP Address

Set the IP address within the ranges shown below.

- The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.
  - CLASS A:10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254
  - CLASS B:172.16.0.1 - 172.31.255.254
  - CLASS C:192.168.0.1 - 192.168.255.254

### Subnet Mask

When connecting an xDSL modem or connector adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input 255.255.255.0.

### Default Gateway

When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.

### Primary DNS, Secondary DNS

If there is only one DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider, input it at "Primary DNS". If two or more DNS are provided by your provider, enter both "Primary DNS" and "Secondary DNS".

## ■ Proxy

Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.  
Make the proxy settings only when you connect to the Internet via a proxy server that is on your internal network or provided by your provider, etc.

<b>On(Address):</b>	Select when inputting by address.
<b>On(Name):</b>	Select when inputting by domain name.
<b>Off (Default):</b>	Disables the proxy server.

## ■ Port

Enter port number.



- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings.  
(☞ p. 79)
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.

## IP Control

Enables network communication in standby power mode.

**Off In Standby:** Suspend network function during standby.

**Always On  
(Default):** Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.



When using the web control function or Marantz Remote App, use with the "IP Control" setting set to "Always On".

### NOTE

When "IP Control" is set to "Always On", it consumes more standby power.

## Friendly Name

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

### ■ Friendly Name

Selects Friendly Name from the list.

When you select “Other”, you can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

Home Theater / Living Room / Family Room / Guest Room / Kitchen / Dining Room / Master Bedroom / Bedroom / Den / Office / Other



- Up to 63 characters can be input.  
For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (☞ p. 188).
- The default Friendly Name on first use is “Marantz AV8802”.

### ■ Set Defaults

Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.

## Diagnostics

Used to check the network connection.

### ■ Physical Connection

Checks the physical LAN port connection.

OK

Error: The LAN cable is not connected. Check the connection.



When connected using a wireless LAN, “Connection Wireless (Wi-Fi)” will be displayed.

### ■ Router Access

Checks the connection from this unit to the router.

OK

Error: Failed to communicate with the router. Check the router settings.

### ■ Internet Access

Checks whether this unit has access to the Internet (WAN).

OK

Error: Failed to connect to the Internet. Check the Internet connection environment or router settings.

## Maintenance Mode

Use when receiving maintenance from a Marantz service engineer or custom installer. Ordinarily, this mode isn't suitable for use by the end user, only by a trained service technician or custom installation professional.

**NOTE**

Only use this function if so instructed by a Marantz serviceperson or installer.



# General

Make various other settings.

## Language

Set the language for display the menu on the TV screen.

**English / Français / Español** (Default : English)



"Language" can also be set up by the following operation. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the settings.

1. Press and hold the main unit's STATUS and ZONE SELECT at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
"Video Format <NTSC>" appears on the display.
2. Press the main unit's ▽.  
"GUI Language ENGLISH" appears on the display.
3. Use the main unit's ▲ or ▼ and set the language.
4. Press the main unit's ENTER to complete the setting.

## ZONE2 Setup / ZONE3 Setup

Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2 and ZONE3.



Values set for "Volume Limit" and "Power On Volume" are displayed according to the setting specified for the volume "Scale". (☞ p. 197)

### Bass

Adjust bass.

**-10 dB – +10 dB** (Default : 0 dB)

### Treble

Adjust treble.

**-10 dB – +10 dB** (Default : 0 dB)

### High Pass Filter

Make settings for cutting the low range to reduce distortion in the bass.

**On:** The low range is attenuated.

**Off**  
(Default): The low range is not attenuated.



## ■ Lch Level

Adjust the left channel output level.

**-12 dB – +12 dB** (Default : 0 dB)

## ■ Rch Level

Adjust the right channel output level.

**-12 dB – +12 dB** (Default : 0 dB)

## ■ Channel

Set whether to playback in stereo or monaural.

**Stereo**  
(Default): Stereo playback.

**Mono:** Monaural playback.

## ■ HDMI Audio (ZONE2 only)

Selects the audio signal format for playing an HDMI source in ZONE2.

**Through** The HDMI audio signal is passed through this unit to the  
(Default): device in ZONE2.

**PCM:** The HDMI audio signal input into this unit is converted to a  
PCM signal that can be output from the ZONE2 PRE OUT  
connectors.

## ■ Volume Level

Set the volume output level.

**Variable**  
(Default): Volume can be adjusted.

**1 – 98**  
**(-79.5 dB – -18.0 dB):** Volume is fixed at the desired level. The  
volume cannot be adjusting using the remote  
control unit.

## ■ Volume Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

**60 (-20 dB) / 70 (-10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)**  
(Default : 70 (-10 dB))

**Off:** Do not set a maximum volume.



This can be set when "Volume Level" is set to "Variable". (☞ p. 265)

## ■ Power On Volume

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

**Last  
(Default):** Use the memorized setting from the last session.

**Mute:** Always use the muting on condition.

**1 – 98  
(-79.5 dB – 18.0 dB):** The volume is adjusted to the set level.



This can be set when "Volume Level" is set to "Variable". (☞ p. 265)

## ■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

**Full  
(Default):** The sound is muted entirely.

**-40 dB :** The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.

**-20 dB :** The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

## Zone Rename

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

**MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3**

**Set Defaults:** The default setting is restored for the edited zone name.



Up to 10 characters can be input.

For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (☞ p. 188).

## Smart Select Names

Change the smart select name that appears on the TV screen to one you prefer.

**Smart Select 1 / Smart Select 2 / Smart Select 3 / Smart Select 4**

**Set Defaults:** The default setting is restored for the edited smart select name.



Up to 16 characters can be input.

For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (☞ p. 188).

## Trigger Out 1 / Trigger Out 2

Select the conditions for activating trigger out.

For details about how to connect the DC OUT jacks, see “DC OUT jacks” (☞ p. 83).

### When setting for zone (MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3)

Trigger out is activated through linkage to the power of the zone set to “On”.

### When setting for input source

Activates trigger out when the input source set to “On” is selected.

### When setting for HDMI monitor

Activates trigger out when the HDMI monitor set to “On” is selected.

On:	Activate trigger on this mode.
-----	--------------------------------

---:	Do not activate trigger on this mode.
------	---------------------------------------

## Auto Standby

Set so the unit power automatically switches to standby.

### ■ MAIN ZONE

Sets the time for switching to auto standby when there are no audio or video signals input into this unit.

Before the unit enters standby mode, “Auto Standby” is displayed on the unit display and the menu screen.

<b>60 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 60 minutes.
----------------	----------------------------------------------

<b>30 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 30 minutes.
----------------	----------------------------------------------

<b>15 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 15 minutes.
----------------	----------------------------------------------

<b>Off</b> (Default):	The unit does not go into standby automatically.
--------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

### ■ ZONE2 / ZONE3

When there are no operations for a certain period of time as set here, the power is automatically shut off even if there is audio or video input.

<b>8 hours:</b>	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 8 hours.
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

<b>4 hours:</b>	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 4 hours.
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

<b>2 hours:</b>	Switches ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state after about 2 hours.
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Does not automatically switch ZONE2/ZONE3 to the standby state.
--------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------



## Front Display

Makes settings related to the display on this unit.

### ■ Dimmer

Adjust the display brightness of this unit.

**Bright**  
(Default): Normal display brightness.

**Dim:** Reduced display brightness.

**Dark:** Very low display brightness.

**Off:** Turns the display off.



You can also adjust the display by pressing DIMMER on the main unit.

### ■ Channel Indicators

Sets whether to use the input signal display or output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

**Input:** Uses the input signal display for the channel indication on the display.

**Output  
(Default):** Uses the output signal display for the channel indication on the display.

## Information

Show information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.

### ■ Audio

Show the audio information for MAIN ZONE.

**Sound Mode:** The currently set sound mode.

**Input Signal:** The input signal type.

**Format:** The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround, LFE).

**Sample Rate:** The input signal's sampling frequency.

**Offset:** The dialogue normalization correction value.

This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with DTS-ES Matrix input signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals.

## ■ Video

Show the HDMI input/output signals and HDMI monitor information for MAIN ZONE.

HDMI Signal Info.

Resolution / Color Space / Pixel Depth

HDMI Monitor 1 / HDMI Monitor 2

Interface / Resolutions

## ■ ZONE

Show information about current settings.

**MAIN ZONE:** This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source.

**ZONE2:** This item shows information about settings for ZONE2.

**ZONE3:** This item shows information about settings for ZONE3.

## ■ Firmware

**Version:** Displays information for the current firmware.

Update (DTS:X)

**DTS Version :** Displays the current DTS version.



"DTS Version" is displayed after updating to DTS:X via firmware update.

## ■ Notifications

Displays and sets notifications.

Also, sets whether or not to display the notification when the power is turned on.

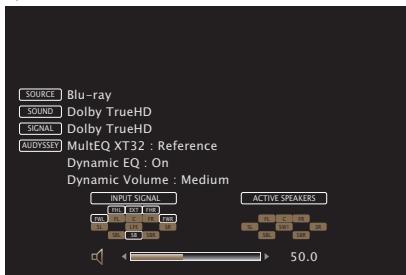
### Notification Alerts

**On**  
(Default): Notification messages are displayed.

**Off:** Notification messages are not displayed.



Press INFO on the remote control unit to display current source name, volume, sound mode name, and other information at the bottom of the screen.



## Usage Data

To help us improve our products and customer service, Marantz collects anonymous information about how you use your AV pre tuner (such as frequently used input sources and sound modes and speaker settings). Marantz will never provide any information we collect to third parties.

**Yes:** Provide information on the operating status of this unit.

**No:** Do not provide information on the operating status of this unit.



## Firmware

Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display for updates and upgrades.

### ■ Update

Updates the firmware of this unit.

<b>Check for Update:</b>	Checks to see if the firmware is the latest version. You can also check approximately how long it will take to complete an update.
<b>Update Start:</b>	Execute the update process. When the update starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the update, the progress is shown on the display.



This unit automatically retries updating if updating fails. If the update still fails, either one of the following messages will appear on the screen. If the display reads as shown below, check the settings and network environment, then update again.

Display	Description
<b>Updating fail</b>	Updating failed.
<b>Login failed</b>	Failure to log into server.
<b>Server is busy</b>	Server is busy. Wait a while then try again.
<b>Connection fail</b>	Failure in connecting to server.
<b>Download fail</b>	Downloading of the firmware has failed.

### ■ Notifications

When the latest firmware is available, a notification message is displayed on the TV screen at power on.

The notification message is displayed for about 40 seconds when the power is turned on.

#### Update

<b>On</b> (Default):	Display update message.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not display update message.

#### Upgrade

<b>On</b> (Default):	Display upgrade message.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not display upgrade message.



## ■ Add New Feature

Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an upgrade.

**Upgrade Package:** Display the items to be upgraded.

**Upgrade Status:** Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.

**Upgrade Start:** Execute the upgrade process.  
When the upgrade starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the upgrade, the amount of upgrade time which has elapsed is displayed.



- See the Marantz website for details about upgrades.
  - When the procedure is complete, "Registered" is displayed in this menu and upgrades can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, "Not Registered" is displayed.
- The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.
- The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit's  $\triangle$  and SETUP for at least 3 seconds.
- If the upgrade is not successful, an error message identical to those in "Firmware" - "Update" will appear on the display. Check the settings and network environment and then perform the upgrade again.

### Notes concerning use of "Update" and "Add New Feature"

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for an Internet connection. (☞ p. 79)
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the  $\text{D}$  on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. "Update Retry" appears on the display and update restarts from the point at which update failed. If the error continues despite this, check the network environment.



Information regarding the "Update" function and "Add New Feature" will be announced on the Marantz web site each time related plans are defined.

## Setup Lock

Protect settings from inadvertent changes.

### ■ Lock

**On:** Turn protection on.

**Off  
(Default):** Turn protection off.

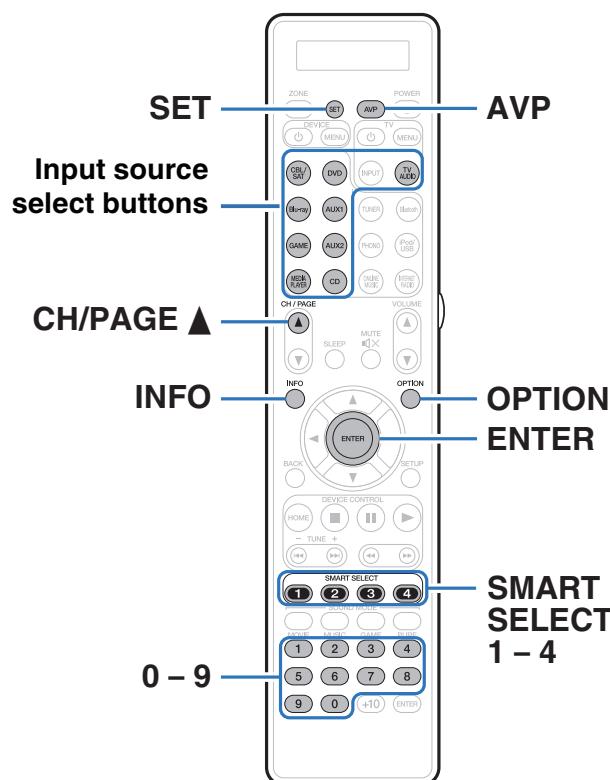


When cancelling the setting, set "Lock" to "Off".

#### NOTE

When "Lock" is set to "On", no setting items are displayed except for "Setup Lock".

# Operating external devices with the remote control unit



When preset codes are registered in the included remote control unit, it can then be used to operate any devices you have, such as DVD players or TVs made by different manufacturers.

## Registering preset codes

There are two methods for registering preset codes; the simple method for registering preset codes of Marantz players, the method for registering the preset numbers of other manufacturers' devices, and the method for experimenting with preset codes one by one for registration.

- “Registering Marantz Players”( p. 275)
- “Registering by entering preset numbers”( p. 276)
- “Experimenting with preset codes one by one for registration”( p. 277)

### ■ Registering Marantz Players

Use the following simple method to register the preset codes of Marantz Blu-ray Disc players, DVD players and CD players.

#### □ Registering Blu-ray Disc Players

- 1 Press and hold down Blu-ray and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

#### □ Registering DVD Players

- 1 Press and hold down DVD and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**

#### □ Registering CD Players

- 1 Press and hold down CD and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.**



## □ Registering multiple players at the same time

- 1** Press and hold down the SMART SELECT 1 – 4 and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.

Devices to be registered at the same time			Press and hold down the buttons
Blu-ray Disc player	DVD player	CD player	
✓	✓		SMART SELECT 1 and OPTION
✓		✓	SMART SELECT 2 and OPTION
	✓	✓	SMART SELECT 3 and OPTION
✓	✓	✓	SMART SELECT 4 and OPTION

### NOTE

Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate. In this case, try “Registering by entering preset numbers” (☞ p. 276).

## ■ Registering by entering preset numbers

Before starting, confirm the preset number of the device that you want to register and the buttons that can be registered in the “Preset Code Table” (☞ p. 354) in the Appendix.

- 1** Press and hold down the input source select button that you want to register the preset code to and SET until “PRSET” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.
- 2** Enter the preset number (4 digits) listed for the device in the Preset Code Table using the number buttons (0 – 9) on the remote control.



- Some manufacturers use more than one type of remote control code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.
- If the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Marantz remote control included with this device. (☞ p. 282)
- To unregister the device from a button and reset to the default setting, set the AVP code “0000” to the button.

### NOTE

Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.

## ■ Experimenting with preset codes one by one for registration

- 1** Switch the power on of the device for which you want to set the preset code.
- 2** Press and hold down the input source select button that you want to register the preset code to and SET until “PRSET” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.
- 3** Aim the remote control at the appliance and slowly alternate between pressing CH/PAGE ▲ and DEVICE ⌂ for the appliance.  
The preset code is shown in the remote control display.
- 4** Stop when the appliance turns off.
- 5** Press ENTER once to lock in the code.



- Some manufacturers use more than one type of remote control code. Preset codes to change the number and verify correct operation.
- If the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Marantz remote control included with this device. ( p. 282)

### NOTE

Depending on the model and year of manufacture of your device, some buttons may not operate.

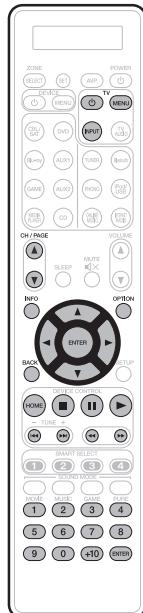
## Operating devices

To operate an external device, press the input source button registered with the preset code, followed by one of the buttons in the following tables.



- When operating an external device, the display on the remote control unit shows the input source name.
- The "TV" indicator lights when the TV is being operated.
- To operate the menu of this unit, press AVP before operating the unit. The "AVP" indicator lights when this unit is being operated.

### TV group (TV) operation

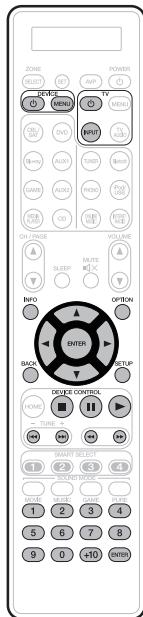


Operation buttons	Function
<b>TV</b>	TV power on/off
<b>TV INPUT</b>	Switch TV input
<b>TV MENU</b>	TV menu
<b>CH/PAGE ▲▼</b>	Switch channels (up/down)
<b>INFO</b>	Information
<b>OPTION</b>	Sub menu, Option
<b>△▽◀▶</b>	Cursor operation
<b>ENTER(Cursor)</b>	Enter
<b>BACK</b>	Back
<b>◀▶◀▶</b>	Skip chapter
<b>▶</b>	Playback
<b>◀▶◀▶</b>	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
<b>■</b>	Pause
<b>■</b>	Stop
<b>0 – 9, +10</b>	Channel selection



TV and TV INPUT buttons can be operated at any time without pressing the TV button.

**DVD group**  
(DVD player / DVD recorder) operation



Operation buttons	Function
<b>DEVICE</b> ⌂	Power on/off
<b>DEVICE MENU</b>	(Popup) Menu
<b>INFO</b>	Information
<b>OPTION</b>	Top menu
△▽◀▶	Cursor operation
<b>ENTER</b>	Enter
<b>BACK</b>	Back
<b>SETUP</b>	Setup
■	Stop
■■	Pause
▶	Playback
◀◀▶▶	Skip chapter
◀◀▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
<b>0 – 9, +10</b>	Select title, chapter or channel selection

#### CD group (CD player / CD recorder) operation



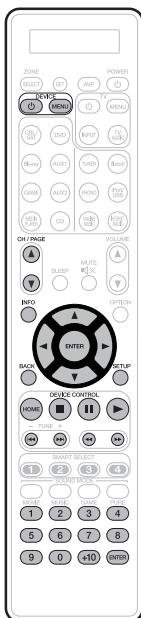
Operation buttons	Function
<b>DEVICE</b> 	Power on/off
<b>DEVICE MENU</b>	(Popup) Menu
<b>INFO</b>	Information
	Cursor operation
<b>ENTER</b>	Enter
	Stop
	Pause
	Playback
	Skip chapter
	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
<b>0 – 9, +10</b>	Select title, chapter or channel selection



Depending on the device, the DEVICE ⏪ button only performs the power-on operation.

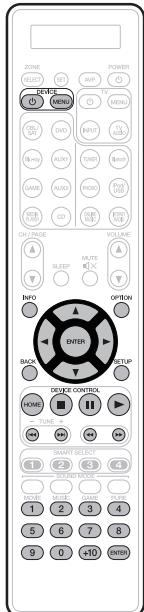


**CBL/SAT group**  
**(Set top box for satellite (SAT)/cable TV (CBL)/  
Media player/IP TV) operation**



Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	Menu
CH/PAGE ▲▼	Switch channels (up/down)
INFO	Information
△▽◀▶	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
HOME	Home menu
■	Stop
■■	Pause
▶	Playback
◀▶▶▶	Skip chapter
◀▶▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
0 – 9, +10	Channel selection

**BD group**  
**(Blu-ray Disc player) operation**



Operation buttons	Function
DEVICE ⏻	Power on/off
DEVICE MENU	(Popup) Menu
INFO	Information
OPTION	Top menu
△▽◀▶	Cursor operation
ENTER	Enter
BACK	Back
SETUP	Setup
HOME	Home menu
■	Stop
■■	Pause
▶	Playback
◀▶▶▶	Skip chapter
◀▶▶▶	Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
0 – 9, +10	Select title, chapter or channel selection



Depending on the device, the DEVICE ⏻ button only performs the power-on operation.

## Checking registered preset codes

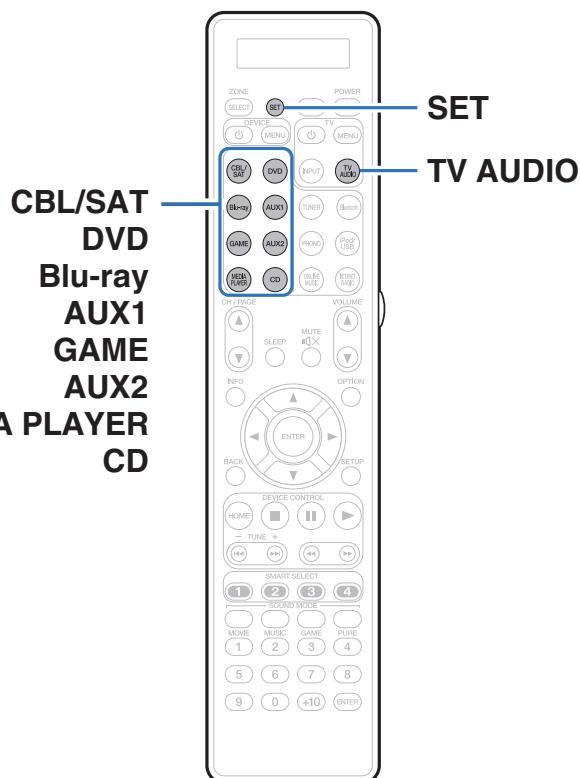
- 1** Press and hold an input source select button for which you want to check the preset code and the SET button until the display on the remote control unit shows “PRSET”.
- 2** Press INFO.  
The set code is shown for 3 seconds in the remote control display.

## Initializing registered preset codes

- 1** Press and hold down AVP and OPTION until “OK” indicator on the remote control display is flashing, then release.



## Operating learning function



If the device does not operate even when the preset code is registered, use the learning function. Remote codes for different devices can be remembered for use by the Marantz remote control included with this device.



## Remembering remote control codes from other devices

**1** Place the Marantz remote control and remote control from the other device approximately 5 cm apart, with the remote control signal transmission sections facing each other.

**2** Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.

**3** Press input source select buttons to select the input source.

The input source is shown in the remote control display.

**4** Select the button to be learned.

LEARN indicator lights up.

**5** Press and hold the button that you want to register on the other remote control until “OK” is displayed on the Marantz remote control display.

- If “NG” is shown on the remote control display, perform step 4 again.

**6** Repeat steps 4 and 5 to learn other buttons for the same input source.

**7** When programming of the remote control unit is completed, press SET.

The LEARN indicator turns off, and the remote control unit exits learn mode.



- There are some remote control units that cannot be programmed, or even if they can be programmed, they may not operate correctly. If this happens, use the remote control unit supplied with the AV equipment to operate it.
- If the remote control memory becomes full, “FULL” is shown on the remote control display. If you want to learn the code, you should erase other learned button.

### NOTE

- The learning function is unavailable for all ZONE SELECT, SET, AVP, POWER  $\diamond$ , VOLUME  $\Delta\blacktriangledown$ , SMART SELECT, SOUND MODE and input source select buttons in any mode.
- If no buttons are pressed for approximately 1 minutes while in the LEARN mode, the remote control unit automatically exits from the LEARN mode.



## Delete saved remote control codes

Codes can be erased in three ways: by buttons, sources, and by all memory contents.

### ■ Delete remote control codes for each button

- 1 Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**
- 2 Press input source select buttons to select the input source you want to delete.**  
The input source is shown in the remote control display.
- 3 Press and hold POWER ⏻ and press the learned button to be erased twice.**  
“ERASE” is shown in the remote control display.
- 4 Press SET.**
  - The LEARN indicator turn off.

### ■ Delete remote control codes for each input source

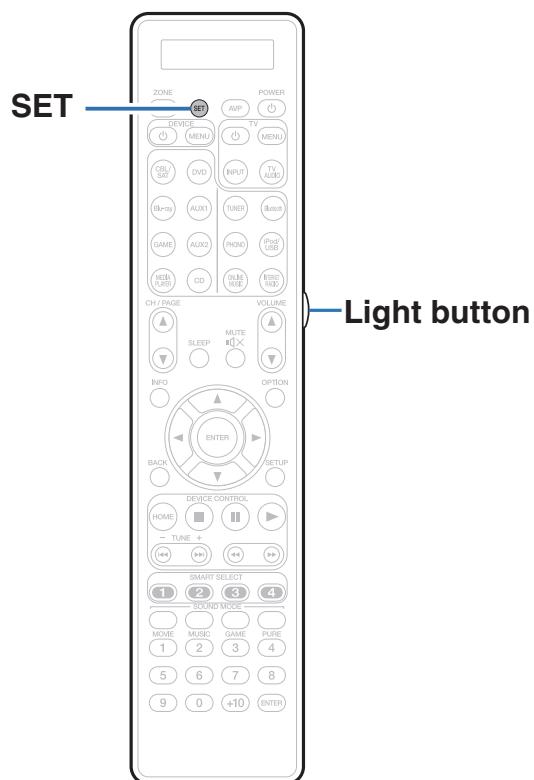
- 1 Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**
- 2 Press and hold POWER ⏻ and press the learned input source select buttons to be erased twice.**  
“ERASE” is shown in the remote control display.
- 3 Press SET.**
  - The LEARN indicator turn off.

### ■ Delete remote control codes for all input sources

- 1 Press and hold SET until the LEARN indicator blinks.**
- 2 Press and hold POWER ⏻ and press AVP twice.**  
“ERASE” is shown in the remote control display.
- 3 Press SET.**
  - The LEARN indicator turn off.



# Setting the back light



You can turn off the backlight of the remote control unit.

- Backlight is set on in the factory settings.

## Disabling the backlight

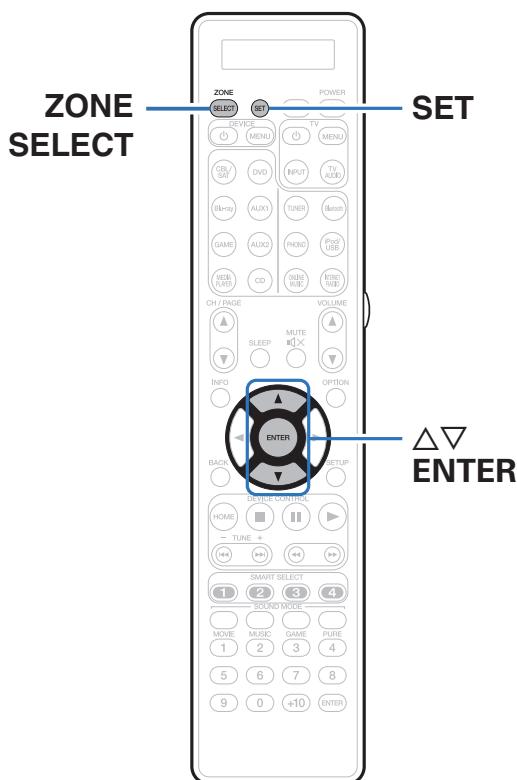
- 1 Press and hold both SET and Light button until “OFF” indicator flashes twice.

## Turning the backlight on

- 1 Press and hold both SET and Light button until “ON” indicator flashes twice.



## Specifying the zone used with the remote control unit



When the ZONE SELECT is pressed, only the set zone can be operated with the remote control unit.

This is useful for preventing mistaken operation.

- The factory setting is "M23".

**1 Press and hold ZONE SELECT and SET for at least 3 seconds.**

**2 Use △▽ to set the zone to be used and press ENTER.**

"SET" flashes four times on the remote control unit and the normal operation mode is restored.

Remote control unit display	Zone to be used
M	MAIN ZONE only
M2	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2
M23	MAIN ZONE / ZONE2 / ZONE3



## ■ Contents

### Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake	288
I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on	288
I want to have the subwoofer always output audio	288
I want to make human voices in the movies clearer	288
I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level	288
I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies	288
I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one	289
I want to combine a desired video with the current music	289
I want to play back photos from Flickr at the same time while listening to the Internet radio	289
I want to delete unused input sources	289
I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.	289
I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I'm playing a game on my game console	289

### Troubleshooting

Power does not turn on / Power is turned off	291
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit	292
Display on this unit shows nothing	292
No sound comes out	293
Desired sound does not come out	294
Sound is interrupted or noise occurs	296
No video is shown on the TV	297
The menu screen is not displayed on the TV	299
iPod cannot be played back	300
USB memory devices cannot be played back	301
File names on the iPod/USB memory device are not displayed properly	302
Bluetooth cannot be played back	302
The Internet radio cannot be played back	303
Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back	304
Various online services cannot be played	304
The HDMI control function does not work	305
When it is not possible to connect to a wireless LAN network	306
When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly	307



## Tips

### I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake

- Set the volume upper limit for “Volume Limit” in the menu beforehand. This prevents children or others from increasing the volume too much by mistake. You can set this for each zone. (☞ p. 197, 265)

### I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on

- By default, the volume setting when power was previously set to standby on this unit is applied at next power on with no change. To use a fixed volume level, set the volume level at power on for “Power On Volume” in the menu. You can set this for each zone. (☞ p. 197, 265)

### I want to have the subwoofer always output audio

- Depending on the input signals and sound mode, the subwoofer may not output audio. When “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”, you can have the subwoofer always output audio. (☞ p. 253)

### I want to make human voices in the movies clearer

- Select a setting that makes the dialog easier to hear in the option menu “Dialog Enhancer”. (☞ p. 143)

### I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level

- Set “Dynamic EQ” in the menu to “On”. This setting corrects the frequency characteristics to allow you to enjoy clear sound without the bass being lost even during playback at a lower volume level. (☞ p. 199)

### I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies

- Set “Dynamic Volume” in the menu. Volume level changes (between quiet scenes and loud scenes) in TV shows or movies are automatically adjusted to your desired level. (☞ p. 200)



**I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one.**

- Perform Audyssey® Setup. This automatically makes the optimized speaker settings for the new listening environment. ( p. 222)

**I want to combine a desired video with the current music**

- Set “Video Select” in the option menu to “On”. You can combine the current music with your desired video source from a Set-top Box or DVD, etc. while listening to music from the Tuner, CD, Phono, Internet radio or Bluetooth. ( p. 146)

**I want to play back photos from Flickr at the same time while listening to the Internet radio**

- After playing back photos from Flickr, start the slide show on the Internet radio playback screen. ( p. 142)

**I want to delete unused input sources**

- Set unused input sources for “Hide Sources” in the menu. This allows you to skip unused input sources when turning the INPUT SELECTOR knob on this unit. ( p. 220)

**I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.**

- Set “All Zone Stereo” in the option menu to “Start”. You can simultaneously play back music in another room (ZONE2, ZONE3) that is played back in MAIN ZONE. ( p. 148)

**I want to minimize the delay in video signals when I'm playing a game on my game console**

- When the video is delayed against button operations with the controller on the game console, set “Video Mode” in the menu to “Game”. ( p. 211)



## Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

- 1. Are the connections correct?**
- 2. Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?**
- 3. Are the other devices operating properly?**

If this unit does not operate properly, check the corresponding symptoms in this section.

If the symptoms do not match any of those described here, consult your dealer as it could be due to a fault in this unit. In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact the store where you purchased this unit.



## ■ Power does not turn on / Power is turned off

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Power does not turn on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet.</li></ul>	84
Power automatically turns off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again.</li><li>“Auto Standby” is set. “Auto Standby” is triggered when there is no operation for a set amount of time. To disable “Auto Standby”, set “Auto Standby” on the menu to “Off”.</li></ul>	167 267
The power to this unit does not turn off when you press the Power operation button. “ZONE2 On” or “ZONE3 On” appears on the display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Power in either ZONE2 or ZONE3 is on. To turn off the power of this unit (standby), press the ZONE2 ON/OFF or ZONE3 ON/OFF button on the main unit or press the ZONE SELECT button on the remote control and select a zone before pressing the POWER  button.</li></ul>	—



## ■ Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries.</li> <li>Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°.</li> <li>Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit.</li> <li>Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the <math>\oplus</math> and <math>\ominus</math> marks.</li> <li>The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light.</li> <li>The operation target zone does not correspond to the zone setting specified on the remote control unit. Press ZONE SELECT to select the zone to operate.</li> <li>The remote control unit operating mode is used to operate other devices. Press AVP to set the operating mode to AVP.</li> <li>When using a 3D video device, the remote control unit of this unit may not function due to effects of infrared communications between units (such as TV and glasses for 3D viewing). In this case, adjust the direction of units with the 3D communications function and their distance to ensure they do not affect operations from the remote control unit of this unit.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">11</a> <a href="#">11</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">11</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">186</a> <a href="#">278</a> <a href="#">—</a>

## ■ Display on this unit shows nothing

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Display is off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set "Dimmer" on the menu to something other than "Off".</li> <li>When the sound mode is set to "Pure Direct", the display is off.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">268</a> <a href="#">151</a>



## ■ No sound comes out

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
No sound comes out of speakers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the connections for all devices.</li> <li>• Insert connection cables all the way in.</li> <li>• Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.</li> <li>• Check cables for damage.</li> <li>• Check the speaker connections and configurations.</li> <li>• Check the connections for PRE OUT connectors.</li> <li>• Check whether the audio device power is turned on.</li> <li>• Check that a proper input source is selected.</li> <li>• Adjust the volume.</li> <li>• Cancel the mute mode.</li> <li>• Check the digital audio input connector setting.</li> <li>• Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, the digital audio output is set to off by default.</li> <li>• When a headphone is plugged into the PHONES jack on the main unit, sound is not output from the PRE OUT connector.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">36</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">50</a> <a href="#">46</a> <a href="#">63</a> <a href="#">86</a> <a href="#">87</a> <a href="#">87</a> <a href="#">218</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a>
No sound comes out when using the DVI-D connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When this unit is connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector, no sound is output. Make a separate audio connection.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a>
No sound comes out of a TV that is connected via HDMI.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Audio signals input to 7.1CH IN connectors on this unit cannot be output to the TV.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a>



## ■ Desired sound does not come out

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The volume does not increase.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using "Limit" on the menu.</li> <li>Appropriate volume correction processing is performed according to the input audio format and settings, so the volume may not reach the upper limit.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">197</a> <a href="#">—</a>
No sound comes out with the HDMI connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the connection of the HDMI connectors.</li> <li>When outputting HDMI audio signals from the speakers of a power amp connected to this unit, set "HDMI Audio Out" in the menu to "AVP". To output from the TV, set it to "TV".</li> <li>When using the HDMI control function, check that the audio output is set to the AV amplifier on the TV.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">64</a> <a href="#">207</a> <a href="#">166</a>
No sound comes out of a specific speaker.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that PRE OUT cables and speaker cables are properly connected.</li> <li>Check that a selection other than "None" is set for the "Speaker Config." setting in menu.</li> <li>Check the "Assign Mode" setting in the menu.</li> <li>When the sound mode is "Stereo" and "Virtual", audio is only output from the front speakers and subwoofer.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">245</a> <a href="#">233</a> <a href="#">—</a>
No sound is produced from subwoofer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the subwoofer connections.</li> <li>Turn on the subwoofer's power.</li> <li>Set "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" in the menu to "1 spkr" or "2 spkrs".</li> <li>When "Speaker Config." - "Front" in the menu is set to "Large", depending on the input signal and the sound mode, no sound may be output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>When no subwoofer audio signal (LFE) is included in the input signals, no sound may be output from the subwoofer.</li> <li>You can make the subwoofer always output sound by setting the "Subwoofer Mode" to "LFE+Main".</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">245</a> <a href="#">245</a> <a href="#">253</a> <a href="#">253</a>
DTS sound is not output.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the digital audio output setting on the connected device is set to "DTS".</li> <li>Set "Decode Mode" on the menu to "Auto" or "DTS".</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">221</a>
Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make HDMI connections.</li> <li>Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, "PCM" is set by default.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">69</a> <a href="#">—</a>



Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
DTS Neo:X mode cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It cannot be selected when “Speaker Config.” - “Surround” is set for “None”.</li> <li>DTS Neo:X cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">245</a> —
DTS Neural:X mode cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DTS Neural:X cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> </ul>	—
Dolby Surround mode cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dolby Surround cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> </ul>	—
Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume® and Audyssey LFC™ cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These cannot be selected when you have not performed Audyssey® Setup.</li> <li>Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.</li> <li>These cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">222</a> <a href="#">151</a> —
Audyssey DSX® cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It can be selected when using the front height or front wide speakers.</li> <li>It can be selected when using the center speaker.</li> <li>Switch the sound mode to Dolby sound mode or DTS sound mode.</li> <li>This cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> <li>This cannot be set when the input signal is a 2-channel source.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">246</a> <a href="#">245</a> <a href="#">150</a> — —
“M-DAX” cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, “M-DAX” cannot be used.</li> <li>Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">196</a> <a href="#">151</a>
No audio is output from PRE OUT for ZONE2/ZONE3.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In ZONE2/ZONE3, the audio can be played back when signals input from digital connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) are in 2ch PCM format.</li> <li>In ZONE2, the audio can be played back when signals input from the HDMI connector are in 2ch PCM format. To play back the audio in ZONE2 irrespective of the input signal format, set “HDMI Audio” in the menu to “PCM”. Depending on the played back device, the audio may not be played back even with this setting. In that case, set the audio format to “PCM (2ch)” on the played back device.</li> <li>When listening to audio from a Bluetooth device in ZONE2/ZONE3, remove any obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit and use it within a range of about 32.8 ft/10 m.</li> </ul>	— <a href="#">265</a> —



## ■ Sound is interrupted or noise occurs

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
During playback from the Internet radio or USB memory device, sound is occasionally interrupted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the transfer speed of the USB memory device is slow, sound may occasionally be interrupted.</li> <li>The network communication speed is slow or the radio station is busy.</li> </ul>	—
When making a call on iPhone, noise occurs in audio output on this unit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When making a call, keep a distance of 0.7 ft/20 cm or longer between iPhone and this unit.</li> </ul>	—
Noise often occurs in FM/AM broadcasting.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change the antenna orientation or position.</li> <li>Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit.</li> <li>Use an FM outdoor antenna.</li> <li>Separate the antenna from other connection cables.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">77</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">77</a> <a href="#">77</a>
The sounds appear to be distorted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower the volume.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">87</a>
Sound cuts out when using Wi-Fi connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If nearby devices cause playback to cut out due to electronic interference, switch to a wired LAN connection.</li> <li>Particularly when you play back large music files, depending on your wireless LAN environment, the playback sound may be interrupted. In this case, make the wired LAN connection.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">79</a> <a href="#">258</a>



## ■ No video is shown on the TV

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
No picture appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the connections for all devices.</li> <li>• Insert connection cables all the way in.</li> <li>• Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.</li> <li>• Check cables for damage.</li> <li>• Match the input settings to the input connector of the TV connected to this unit.</li> <li>• Check that the proper input source is selected.</li> <li>• Check the video input connector setting.</li> <li>• Check that the resolution of the player corresponds to that of the TV.</li> <li>• Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly.</li> <li>• To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.</li> <li>• The HDMI signal cannot be converted to an analog signal. Use analog connections.</li> <li>• Use an "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" or "High speed cable" that comes with the HDMI logo if you wish to playback 4K (60/50 Hz) video.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">64</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">218</a> <a href="#">86</a> <a href="#">218</a> <a href="#">269</a> <a href="#">311</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">312</a> <a href="#">—</a>
No video is shown on the TV with the DVI-D connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With the DVI-D connection, on some device combinations, devices may not function properly due to the copy guard copyright protection (HDCP).</li> </ul>	<a href="#">311</a>
No video from an input source such as a game console is shown on the TV.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When special video signals are input from a game console, etc., the video conversion function may not function. Connect the input connector to the monitor output connector of the same type.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a>
While the menu is being displayed, no video is shown on the TV.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The video being played will not appear in the background of the menu when the menu is operated during playback of the following video signals.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Some images of 3D video contents</li> <li>- Computer resolution images (example: VGA)</li> <li>- Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3</li> <li>- 4K video</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a>



Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
When using HDMI ZONE2, the video output in MAIN ZONE is interrupted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>When ZONE2 is operated with the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, video in MAIN ZONE may be interrupted.</li></ul>	—



## ■ The menu screen is not displayed on the TV

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The menu screen or status information screen is not displayed on the TV.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The menu screen is only displayed on this unit and a TV connected with an HDMI cable. If this unit is connected to a TV using a different video output connector, operate while watching the display on this unit.</li><li>The status information will not appear on the TV when the following video signals are being played.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Some images of 3D video content</li><li>- Computer resolution images (example: VGA)</li><li>- Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3</li></ul></li><li>When a 2D video is converted to a 3D video on the TV, the menu screen or status information screen is not displayed properly.</li><li>In the pure direct playback mode, the menu screen or status information is not displayed. Switch to a sound mode other than the pure direct mode.</li><li>Set the "TV Format" setting in the menu to a selection that is appropriate for the TV.</li></ul>	— <a href="#">150</a> <a href="#">150</a> <a href="#">150</a> <a href="#">217</a>



## ■ iPod cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
iPod cannot be connected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using iPod by connecting it to the USB port, some iPod variations are not supported.</li> <li>When iPod is connected by using a USB cable other than the genuine cable, iPod may not be recognized. Use a genuine USB cable.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">74</a> <a href="#">—</a>
The AirPlay icon  is not displayed on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This unit and PC / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect it to the same LAN as this unit.</li> <li>The firmware on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is not compatible with AirPlay. Update the firmware to the latest version.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">79</a> <a href="#">—</a>
Audio is not output.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is set to the minimum level. The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is linked with the volume on this unit. Set a proper volume level.</li> <li>The AirPlay playback is not performed, or this unit is not selected. Click the AirPlay icon  on the iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad screen and select this unit.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">135</a>
Audio is interrupted during the AirPlay playback on iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay.</li> <li>Some external factors may be affecting the wireless connection. Modify the network environment by taking measures such as shortening the distance from the wireless LAN access point.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">—</a>
iTunes cannot be played back through the remote control unit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enable the “Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers” setting on iTunes. Then, you can perform playback, pause, and skip operations through the remote control unit.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a>



## ■ USB memory devices cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
"No connection" is displayed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This unit cannot recognize the USB memory device. Disconnect and reconnect the USB memory device.</li> <li>Mass storage class compatible USB memory devices are supported.</li> <li>This unit does not support a connection through a USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port.</li> <li>The USB memory device must be formatted to FAT16 or FAT32.</li> <li>Not all USB memory devices are guaranteed to work. Some USB memory devices are not recognized. When using a type of portable hard disc drive compatible with the USB connection that requires power from an AC adapter, use the AC adapter that came with the drive.</li> </ul>	74 — — — —
Files on the USB memory device are not displayed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed.</li> <li>This unit is able to display files in a maximum of eight folder layers. A maximum of 5000 files (folders) can also be displayed for each layer. Modify the folder structure of the USB memory device.</li> <li>When multiple partitions exist on the USB memory device, only files on the first partition are displayed.</li> </ul>	93 — —
Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Files are created in a format that is not supported by this unit. Check the formats supported by this unit.</li> <li>You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.</li> <li>Playback may not be possible if the album art file size exceeds 2 MB.</li> </ul>	314 — —



## ■ File names on the iPod/USB memory device are not displayed properly

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The file names are not displayed properly (“...”, etc.).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Characters that cannot be displayed have been used. On this unit, characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with a “.” (period).</li> </ul>	—

## ■ Bluetooth cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Bluetooth devices cannot be connected to this unit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Bluetooth function in the Bluetooth device has not been enabled. See the Owner's Manual of the Bluetooth device to enable the Bluetooth function.</li> <li>Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.</li> <li>The Bluetooth device cannot connect with this unit if it is not compatible with the A2DP profile.</li> <li>Turn the power of the Bluetooth device off and on again, and then try again.</li> </ul>	—
The sound is cut off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.</li> <li>Remove obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit.</li> <li>To prevent electromagnetic interference, locate this unit away from microwave ovens, wireless LAN devices and other Bluetooth devices.</li> <li>Reconnect the Bluetooth device.</li> </ul>	—



## ■ The Internet radio cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
A list of broadcasting stations is not displayed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The LAN cable is not properly connected, or the network is disconnected. Check the connection status.</li> <li>Perform the network diagnostic mode.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">79</a> <a href="#">—</a>
Internet Radio cannot be played.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The selected radio station is broadcasting in a format that is not supported by this unit. Formats that can be played back in this unit are MP3, WMA and AAC.</li> <li>The firewall function is enabled on the router. Check the firewall setting.</li> <li>The IP address is not properly set.</li> <li>Check the power of the router is on.</li> <li>To obtain the IP address automatically, enable the DHCP server function on the router. Also, set the DHCP setting to “On” on this unit.</li> <li>To obtain the IP address manually, set the IP address and proxy on this unit.</li> <li>Some radio stations broadcast silently during some time period. In this case, no audio is output. Wait for a while and select the same radio station, or select another radio station.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">317</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">260</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">260</a> <a href="#">—</a> <a href="#">113</a>
Cannot connect to favorite radio stations.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Radio station is not currently in service. Register radio stations in service.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a>
For some radio stations, “Connection down” is displayed and station cannot be connected to.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The selected radio station is not in service. Select a radio station in service.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">—</a>



## ■ Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Files stored on a computer cannot be played.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format.</li> <li>Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.</li> <li>The set's USB port cannot be used for connection to a computer.</li> <li>Media sharing settings are not correct. Change media sharing settings so that the unit can access the folders on your computer.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">316</a> — — <a href="#">117</a>
Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings.</li> <li>Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power.</li> <li>Server is not running. Launch the server.</li> <li>Set's IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address.</li> </ul>	— — — <a href="#">257</a>
Music files on PC cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Even if PC is connected to the USB port on this unit, music files on it cannot be played back. Connect PC to this unit through the network.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">79</a>
Files on PC or NAS are not displayed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">316</a>
Music stored on a NAS cannot be played.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable the DLNA server function in the NAS setting.</li> <li>If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard, play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder.</li> <li>If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection target.</li> </ul>	— <a href="#">117</a> —

## ■ Various online services cannot be played

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Various online services cannot be played.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The online service may have been discontinued.</li> </ul>	—



## ■ The HDMI control function does not work

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The HDMI control function does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check that "HDMI Control" in the menu is set to "On".</li><li>You cannot operate devices that are not compatible with the HDMI control function. In addition, depending on the connected device or the settings, the HDMI control function may not work. In this case, operate the external device directly.</li><li>Check that the HDMI control function setting is enabled on all devices connected to this unit.</li><li>When you make connection related changes such as connecting an additional HDMI device, the link operation settings may be initialized. Turn off this unit and devices connected via HDMI, and turn them on again.</li><li>The HDMI MONITOR 2 connector is not compatible with the HDMI control function. Use the HDMI MONITOR 1 connector to connect to the TV.</li></ul>	<a href="#">209</a> <a href="#">166</a> <a href="#">166</a> <a href="#">166</a> <a href="#">64</a>



## ■ Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Cannot connect to the network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The network name (SSID), password and encryption setting have not been set up correctly. Configure the network settings according to the setting details of this unit.</li> <li>Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN access point and remove any obstructions to improve access first before re-connecting again. Place the unit away from microwave ovens and other network access points.</li> <li>Configure the access point channel settings away from channels that are being used by other networks.</li> <li>This unit is not compatible with WEP (TSN).</li> </ul>	<a href="#">259</a> — — —
Cannot connect to WPS.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the WPS mode of the router is operating.</li> <li>Press the WPS button on the router and then press the “Connect” button displayed on the TV within 2 minutes.</li> <li>A router/settings that are compatible with WPS 2.0 standards are required. Set the encryption time to “None”, “WPA-PSK (AES)” or WPA2-PSK (AES).</li> <li>If the router encryption method is WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-TKIP, you cannot connect by using the WPS button. In this case, use the “Scan Networks” or “Manual” method to connect.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">259</a> — — —
Cannot connect to the network using iPhone/iPod touch/iPad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad firmware to the latest version.</li> <li>When using a USB cable to configure the settings, the iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 5 or later. When configuring the settings via a wireless connection, iOS 7 or later needs to be supported.</li> </ul>	— —



## ■ When using HDMI ZONE2, the devices does not function properly

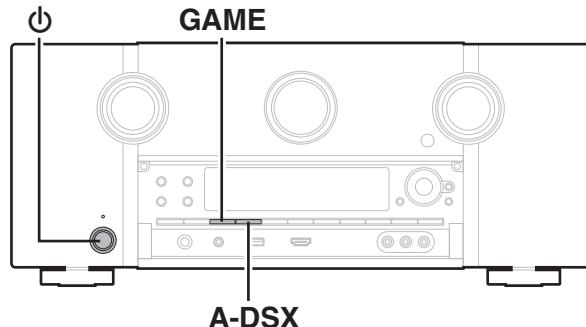
Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
When using MAIN ZONE, video output is interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>With the same input source selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, when you operate MAIN ZONE, video may be interrupted in HDMI ZONE2.</li> </ul>	—
When using HDMI ZONE2, no video or audio is output from the TV in ZONE2.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the power is on for ZONE2.</li> <li>Check the input source for ZONE2.</li> <li>The AUX1-HDMI connector on the front panel does not support the HDMI ZONE2 function.</li> <li>In ZONE2, playback is only possible when the input signals are HDMI signals.</li> <li>When the TV does not support the input audio format, audio is not output. Set the audio format to "PCM" on the playback device. Alternatively, set "ZONE2 Setup" - "HDMI Audio" in the menu to "PCM".</li> <li>When the TV is not compatible with the resolution of the input video, no video is output. Set the output resolution on the playback device to a resolution that is compatible with the TV.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">181</a> <a href="#">181</a> — — <a href="#">265</a> —
When using HDMI ZONE2, MAIN ZONE audio is played back as PCM.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the same input source is selected for MAIN ZONE and ZONE2, the audio format is limited according to the specifications of the TV in ZONE2.</li> </ul>	—



## Resetting factory settings

Perform this procedure if the display is abnormal or if operations cannot be performed.

Various settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.



- 1 Turn off the power using ø.**
- 2 Press ø while simultaneously pressing GAME and A-DSX.**
- 3 Remove your fingers from the two buttons when "Initialized" appears on the display.**



- Before restoring the default setting, the “Save” function of the web control function can be used to store the various settings of the unit. (☞ p. 173)  
However, account information for network content and information on registered favorites cannot be stored.
- When deleting a Pandora account, carry out steps 1 to 3 after signing out in the Pandora service. (☞ p. 130)

# About HDMI

HDMI is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier.

With the HDMI connection, high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Blu-ray Disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio) can be transmitted, which is not possible with the analog video transmission.

Furthermore, in the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable, while in conventional connections it is necessary to provide audio and video cables separately for connection between devices. This allows you to simplify the wiring configuration that tends to be quite complex in a home theater system. This unit supports the following HDMI functions.

- **Deep Color**

An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB or YCbCr, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.

Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

- **"x.v.Color"**

This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors.

"x.v.Color" is trademark of Sony Corporation.

- **3D**

This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI. To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

- **4K**

This unit supports input and output of 4K (3840 x 2160 pixels) video signals of HDMI.

- **Content Type**

It automatically makes settings suitable for the video output type (content information).

- **Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color**

The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

- **sYCC601 color**

Each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.



**• Auto Lip Sync**

This function can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.

Use a TV that is compatible with the Auto Lip Sync function.

**• HDMI Pass Through**

Even when the power to this unit is set to standby, signals input from the HDMI input connector are output to a TV or other device that is connected to the HDMI output connector.

**• HDMI Control**

If you connect the unit and an HDMI control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.

**• Power off link**

This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.

**• Audio output destination switching**

From the TV, you can switch whether to output audio from the TV or the AV amplifier.

**• Volume adjustment**

You can adjust this unit's volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.

**• Input source switching**

You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.

When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.

**• ARC (Audio Return Channel)**

This function transmits audio signals from the TV to this unit through the HDMI cable and plays back the audio from the TV on this unit based on the HDMI control function.

If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.

In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.



## ■ Supported audio formats

2-channel Linear PCM	2-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Multi-channel Linear PCM	7.1-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Bitstream	Dolby Digital / DTS / Dolby Atmos / Dolby TrueHD / Dolby Digital Plus / DTS-HD Master Audio / DTS-HD High Resolution Audio / DTS Express
DSD	2-channel – 5.1-channel, 2.8224 MHz

## ■ Supported video signals

- 480i
- 480p
- 576i
- 576p
- 720p 60/50Hz
- 1080i 60/50Hz
- 1080p 60/50/24Hz
- 4K 60/50/30/25/24 Hz

### Copyright protection system

In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD video or DVD video via HDMI connection, both this unit and the TV or player must to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP.

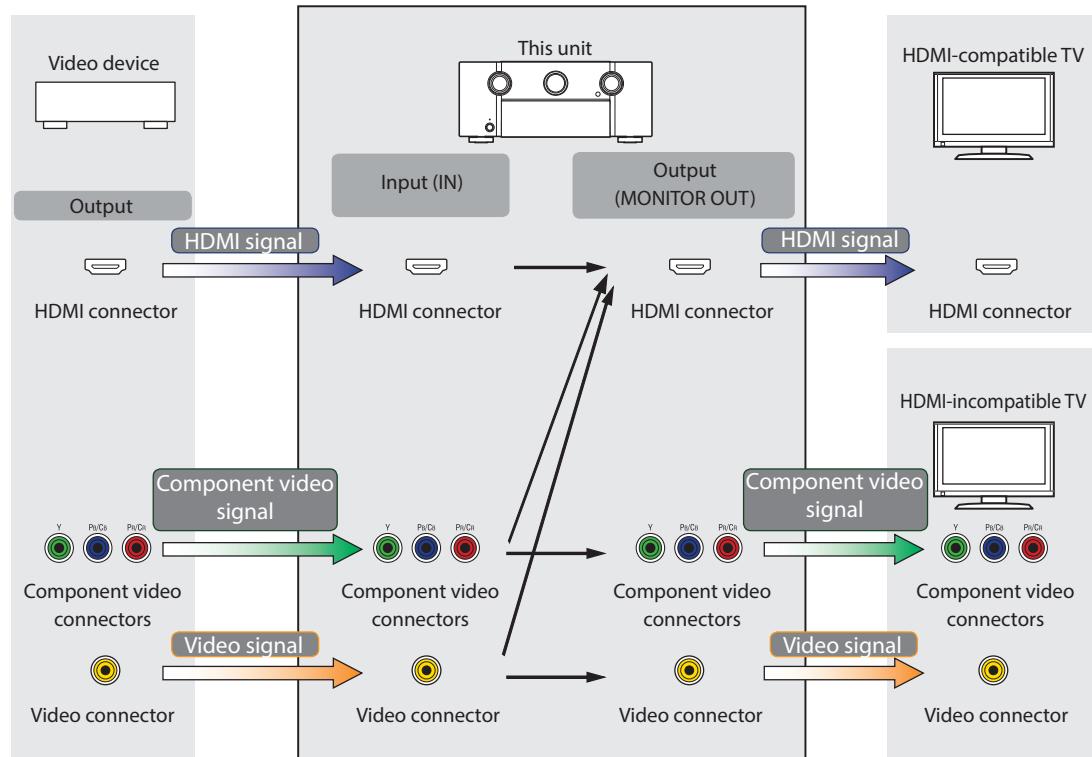
- If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner's manual of your television or player for more information.



When connecting this unit to a device that is compatible with the Deep Color, 4K and ARC functions, use a "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" that bears the HDMI logo.

# Video conversion function

This unit automatically converts the input video signals as shown in the diagram before outputting them to the TV.



The main zone video conversion function is compatible with the following formats: NTSC, PAL, SECAM, NTSC4.43, PAL-N, PAL-M and PAL-60.

This unit can convert the input video signals to the resolution that is set for "Resolution" in the menu before outputting them to the TV. (☞ p. 213)

Input signal	Output signal	HDMI							
		480i/576i	480p/576p	720p	1080i	1080p	1080p 24Hz	4K 30/25/24Hz	4K 60/50Hz
HDMI	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	720p			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080i			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p 24Hz					✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p					✓	✓	✓	✓
	4K 30/25/24Hz							✓	
	4K 60/50Hz								✓ *
Component Video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	480p/576p		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	720p			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080i			✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1080p					✓	✓	✓	✓
Video	480i/576i	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

\* The HDMI connector on the front panel is not compatible.



# Playing back a USB memory devices

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.

## ■ Compatible formats

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1 / 48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC*2	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96 kHz	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8 MHz	–	.dsf/ .dff
AIFF	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.aif/ .aiff

\*1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.  
Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected.  
Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer  
may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

\*2 Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings, Inc.]  
Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not  
use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of  
the License at  
<http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>



In ZONE2, it is not possible to play the DSD signal.

## ■ Maximum number of playable files and folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

Item	Media	USB memory device
Memory capacity		FAT16 : 2 GB, FAT32 : 2 TB
Number of folder directory levels *1		8 levels
Number of folders		500
Number of files*2		5000

\*1 The limited number includes the root folder.

\*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

## Playing back a Bluetooth device

This unit supports the following Bluetooth profile.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile):  
When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, monaural and stereo sound data can be streamed at a high quality.
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile):  
When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, the Bluetooth device can be operated from this unit.

## ■ About Bluetooth communications

Radio waves broadcast from this unit may interfere with the operation of medical devices. Make sure you turn off the power of this unit and Bluetooth device in the following locations as radio wave interference may cause malfunctions.

- Hospitals, trains, aircraft, petrol kiosks and places where flammable gases are generated
- Near automatic doors and fire alarms



# Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.

## ■ Specifications of supported files

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/ 48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC*2	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96 kHz	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8 MHz	–	.dsf/ .dff
AIFF	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.aif/ .aiff

\*1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit.  
Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected.  
Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer  
may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.

\*2 Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings, Inc.]  
Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not  
use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of  
the License at  
<http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>



In ZONE2, it is not possible to play the DSD signal.

## Playing back Internet Radio

### ■ Playable broadcast station specifications

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1 / 48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/.m4a/.mp4

## Personal memory plus function

The most recently used settings (input mode, HDMI output mode, sound mode, tone control, channel level, MultEQ® XT32, Dynamic EQ, Dynamic Volume, M-DAX and audio delay, etc.) are saved for each input source.



"Surround Parameter" settings are stored for each sound mode.

## Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.

# Sound modes and channel output

○ This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.

◎ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of "Speaker Config." (☞ p. 245).

Sound mode	Channel output														
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Wide L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Top Rear L/R	Rear Height L/R	Surround Height L/R	Top Surround	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Back Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel)	○														○*7
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel)	○	○	○	○*3	○*3	○*3									○
DSD Direct (2-channel)	○														○*7
DSD Direct (Multi-channel)	○	○	○												○
Stereo	○														○
Multi Ch In	○	○	○	○*3	○*2										○
Dolby Surround *1	○	○	○	○*4		○	○	○	○				○	○	○
DTS Neo:X *2	○	○	○	○*5	○*5	○*5									○
Audyssey DSX®	○	○	○		○*6	○*6									○
Dolby Digital	○														○
Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○	○	○*3	○*3	○*3								○
Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○	○	○*3	○*3	○*3								○
Dolby Atmos	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○	○	○	○
DTS Surround	○	○	○	○	○										○
DTS 96/24	○	○	○	○	○										○
DTS-HD	○	○	○	○	○*3	○*3	○*3								○
DTS Express	○	○	○	○	○										○
Multi Ch Stereo	○	○	○	○*5	○*5	○*5	○*5	○*5	○*5	○*5	○*5				○
Virtual	○														○



- \*1 The applicable sound mode includes "Dolby Surround" and sound modes that have "+Dolby Surround" in the sound mode name.
- \*2 The applicable sound mode includes "DTS Neo:X" and sound modes that have "+Neo:X" in the sound mode name.
- \*3 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
- \*4 Audio is not output when "Speaker Config." - "Surr. Back" in the menu is set to "1 spkr". ([p. 246](#))
- \*5 Audio is output from the speakers specified in the "Surround Parameter" - "Speaker Select" settings. ([p. 195](#))
- \*6 Audio is output from the speakers specified in the "Audyssey DSX®" settings. ([p. 201](#))
- \*7 Audio is output when "Subwoofer Mode" in the menu is set to "LFE+Main". ([p. 253](#))

### Update (DTS:X)

Sound mode	Channel output														
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Wide L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Top Rear L/R	Rear Height L/R	Surround Height L/R	Top Surround	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Back Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R
DTS:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>												
DTS Neural:X *8	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>												

- \*8 The applicable sound mode includes "DTS Neural:X" and sound modes that have "+Neural:X" in the sound mode name.



- You can select DTS:X or DTS Neural:X if updated to DTS:X.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

Sound mode	Channel output														
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Wide L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Top Rear L/R	Rear Height L/R	Surround Height L/R	Top Surround	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Back Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R
Auro-3D	○	○	○	○		○			○*9	○	○*10				○
Auro-2D Surround	○	○	○	○											○

\*9 For the best Auro-3D experience surround height speakers are recommended, however you may substitute rear height speakers in place of surround height speakers.

\*10 This is output if an Auro-3D signal is input and the input signal contains Top Surround.



# Sound modes and surround parameters

Sound mode	Surround Parameter									
	Subwoofer Level Adjust	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management *1	Dynamic Compression *2	Low Frequency Effects *3	Speaker Select	Center Spread	Center Gain	Dialog Control	DTS Neural:X
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *4	○*5		○	○						
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *4	○		○	○	○					
DSD Direct (2-channel)	○*5									
DSD Direct (Multi-channel) *4	○				○					
Stereo	○		○	○						
Multi Ch In	○	○			○					
Dolby Surround	○	○	○	○			○			
DTS Neo:X	○	○	○	○		○		○		
Audyssey DSX®	○	○	○	○	○					
Dolby Digital	○	○	○	○	○					
Dolby Digital Plus	○	○	○	○	○					
Dolby TrueHD	○	○	○	○	○					
Dolby Atmos	○	○	○	○	○					
DTS Surround	○	○		○	○					
DTS 96/24	○	○			○					
DTS-HD	○	○			○					
DTS Express	○	○			○					
Multi Ch Stereo	○		○	○	○	○				
Virtual	○		○	○	○					

\*1 - \*5 : "Sound modes and surround parameters" (☞ p. 325)



Sound mode	Surround Parameter		Dialog Enhancer	Tone *6	Audyssey					M-DAX *9	Bass Sync *10
	Auro-Matic 3D Preset	Auro-Matic 3D Strength			MultEQ® XT32 *7	Dynamic EQ *8	Dynamic Volume *8	Audyssey LFC™ *8	Audyssey DSX®		
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *4											
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *4											
DSD Direct (2-channel)											
DSD Direct (Multi-channel) *4											
Stereo			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Multi Ch In			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Surround			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS Neo:X			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Audyssey DSX®			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Digital			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Digital Plus			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby TrueHD			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Dolby Atmos			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS Surround			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS 96/24			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS-HD			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
DTS Express			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Multi Ch Stereo			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Virtual			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

\*4, \*6 – \*10 : “Sound modes and surround parameters” (☞ p. 325)



**Update (DTS:X)**

Sound mode	Surround Parameter									
	Subwoofer Level Adjust	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management *1	Dynamic Compression *2	Low Frequency Effects *3	Speaker Select	Center Spread	Center Gain	Dialog Control *12	DTS Neural:X
DTS:X	○	○		○	○				○	○
DTS Neural:X	○	○		○						

Sound mode	Surround Parameter		Dialog Enhancer	Tone *6	Audyssey					M-DAX *9	Bass Sync *10
	Auro-Matic 3D Preset	Auro-Matic 3D Strength			MultEQ® XT32 *7*13	Dynamic EQ *8	Dynamic Volume *8	Audyssey LFC™ *8	Audyssey DSX®		
DTS:X			○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○
DTS Neural:X			○	○	○	○	○	○	○		

\*1 - \*3, \*6 - \*10 : "Sound modes and surround parameters" (☞ p. 325)

\*12 This item can be selected when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

\*13 This item cannot be selected when a DTS:X format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.



- You can select DTS:X or DTS Neural:X if updated to DTS:X.
- DTS Neo:X is no longer supported once you update to DTS:X.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

Sound mode	Surround Parameter									
	Subwoofer Level Adjust	Cinema EQ	Loudness Management *1	Dynamic Compression *2	Low Frequency Effects *3	Speaker Select	Center Spread	Center Gain	Dialog Control	DTS Neural:X
Auro-3D	○	○			○					
Auro-2D Surround	○	○			○					

Sound mode	Surround Parameter		Dialog Enhancer	Tone *6	Audyssey					M-DAX *9	Bass Sync *10
	Auro-Matic 3D Preset	Auro-Matic 3D Strength			MultEQ® XT32 *7	Dynamic EQ *8	Dynamic Volume *8	Audyssey LFC™ *8	Audyssey DSX®		
Auro-3D	○*11	○*11	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Auro-2D Surround			○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

\*1 - \*3, \*6 - \*11 : "Sound modes and surround parameters" (☞ p. 325)



- \*1 This item can be selected when the Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is played back.
- \*2 This item can be selected when the Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or DTS is played back.
- \*3 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
- \*4 During playback in Pure Direct mode, the surround parameters are the same as in Direct mode.
- \*5 This setting is available when "Subwoofer Mode" in the menu is set to "LFE+Main". ([\(☞ p. 253\)](#)
- \*6 This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ" is set to "On". ([\(☞ p. 199\)](#)
- \*7 This item cannot be set when Audyssey® Setup (Speaker Calibration) has not been performed.
- \*8 This item cannot be set when "MultEQ® XT32" in the menu is set to "Off". ([\(☞ p. 198\)](#)
- \*9 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.
- \*10 This can be set when the LFE signal is included in the input signal.
- \*11 This can be set if the input signal does not contain an Auro-3D signal or if the input Auro-3D signal does not contain Front Height channels.



# Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

● This indicates the default sound mode.

○ This indicates the selectable sound mode.

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal											
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DSD (Super Audio CD)
DTS Surround																	
DTS-HD MSTR																	
DTS-HD HI RES																	
DTS ES Dscrt6.1	*1									●*3							○*12
DTS ES Mtrx6.1	*1									●*4							
DTS Surround											●						
DTS 96/24											○	○					
DTS(-HD) + Dolby Surround													●				
DTS Express													●				
DTS(-HD) + Neo:X	*2												●				○*12
DTS Neo:X		○	○	●	○												
Dolby Surround																	
Dolby Atmos													●				
Dolby TrueHD													○*6	○			○*13
Dolby Digital+													○*7		○		
Dolby(D+)(HD) + Dolby Surround														●	●	●	
Dolby Digital														○*8	○	○	
Dolby(D)(D+)(HD) + Neo:X	*2														○	○	○*13
Dolby Surround		○	●	○	○												

\*1-\*8, \*12, \*13: "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 329)



Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal												
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Auro-3D
Multi Ch In						●												
Multi Ch In						○											●	○*14
Multi Ch In + Dolby Surround						○											○	
Multi Ch In + Neo:X	*2					○											○	
Multi Ch In 7.1	*1					●*10											○	
Audyssey																		
Audyssey DSX®						○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*8	○	○	○	○	
Direct						○*9	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Direct							○											
DSD Direct								○									○	
Pure Direct						○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Pure Direct							○											
DSD Pure Direct								○									○	
Original sound mode						○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Multi Ch Stereo						○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Virtual						○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Stereo																		
Stereo						●	○	○	●	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	

\*1, \*2, \*8 - \*10, \*14 : "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 329)



**Update (DTS:X)**

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal											
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Auro-3D
DTS Surround							●										
DTS:X MSTR / DTS:X							○	○	○	○	○						
DTS (-HD) + Neural:X	*15																
DTS Neural:X	*15	○		●	○												
Multi Ch In						○											
Multi Ch In + Neural:X																○	

\*15 This item cannot be selected when a DTS(-HD) format with a sampling frequency of over 48 kHz is input.



- You can select DTS:X or DTS Neural:X if updated to DTS:X.
- DTS Neo:X is no longer supported once you update to DTS:X.
- DTS or DTS-HD signal + Dolby Surround up-mixing is not supported once you update to DTS:X. Please select DTS Neural:X for DTS coded material.
- Dolby or Dolby TrueHD + DTS Neural:X up-mixing is not supported. Please select Dolby Surround for Dolby coded material.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal											
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	DSD (Super Audio CD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	DSD (Super Audio CD)	Auro-3D
Auro-3D																	
Auro-3D	*11	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Auro-2D Surround	*11	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

\*6, \*7, \*11 : "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 329)



- \*1 This item can be selected when surround back speakers are used.
- \*2 The "Cinema" mode, "Music" mode or "Game" mode can be selected. This item can be selected when using any of the surround back, front height or front wide speaker.
- \*3 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Master Audio.
- \*4 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Hi Resolution.
- \*5 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS 96/24.
- \*6 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD signal.
- \*7 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby Digital Plus signal.
- \*8 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Digital Plus signal.
- \*9 The default sound mode for the AirPlay playback is "Direct".
- \*10 This item can be selected when the input signals contain surround back signals.
- \*11 This item cannot be selected if the sampling frequency of the input signal is 32 kHz.
- \*12 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains DTS-HD Master Audio.
- \*13 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Dolby TrueHD.
- \*14 This item can be selected if the Auro-3D signal contains Multi Channel PCM.



# Explanation of terms

## ■ Audyssey

### Audyssey Dynamic EQ®

Dynamic EQ solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

### Audyssey Dynamic Surround Expansion (A-DSX)

Audyssey DSX® is a new surround enhancement technology that raises the surround effect and impression to realize a larger surround space by adding a new channel to the existing 5.1 channel system.

In research on human hearing characteristics, two points can be broadly cited as elements that enhance the surround effect. The most important point is the creation of horizontal spread (wide channel) at the front (forward) area in composing a realistic surround space. The next important point is the creation of vertical spread (height channel) in the front (forward) area using recognizable (audible) acoustic signals so as to create a surround space with depth.

Audyssey DSX® then creates a pair of Height channels to reproduce the next most important acoustical and perceptual cues. In addition, Audyssey DSX® does not simply add a channel but combines the existing front, surround and rear surround sound to develop a technology known as "Surround Envelopment Processing" which has been incorporated into Audyssey DSX® to further enhance the effect.



## Audyssey Dynamic Volume®

Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

## Audyssey LFC™ (Low Frequency Containment)

Audyssey LFC™ solves the problem of low frequency sounds disturbing people in neighboring rooms or apartments. Audyssey LFC™ dynamically monitors the audio content and removes the low frequencies that pass through walls, floors and ceilings. It then applies psychoacoustic processing to restore the perception of low bass for listeners in the room. The result is great sound that no longer disturbs the neighbors.

## Audyssey MultEQ® XT32

Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT32 calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

## Upgrade (Auro-3D)

### ■ Auro-3D

#### Auro-3D®

The Auro-3D® technology suite is a groundbreaking new audio technology that combines height-based listening formats with powerful creative tools to deliver an unrivaled three-dimensional sound experience. Auro-3D® is the general format name for Sound in 3D and its related speaker lay-outs.

#### Auro-Matic®

Auro-Matic® up-mixing technology software is a unique creative tool that transforms legacy Mono, Stereo and Surround content into a natural 3D or 2D listening experience.



## ■ Dolby

### Dolby Atmos

Introduced first in the cinema, Dolby Atmos brings a revolutionary sense of dimension and immersion to the Home Theater experience. Dolby Atmos is an adaptable and scalable object based format that reproduces audio as independent sounds (or objects) that can be accurately positioned and move dynamically throughout the 3 dimensional listening space during playback. A key ingredient of Dolby Atmos is the introduction of a height plane of sound above the listener.

### Dolby Atmos Stream

Dolby Atmos content will be delivered to your Dolby Atmos enabled AV pre tuner via Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD on Blu-ray Disc, downloadable files and streaming media. A Dolby Atmos stream contains special metadata that describes the positioning of sounds within the room. This object audio data is decoded by a Dolby Atmos AV pre tuner and scaled for optimum playback through Home Theater speaker systems of every size and configuration.

### Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1-channels are played: 3 front channels ("FL", "FR" and "C"), 2 surround channels ("SL" and "SR") and the "LFE" channel for low frequency effects.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a "three-dimensional" feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved. This delivers a thrilling surround sound experience in the home.

### Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.



## Dolby Surround

Dolby surround is a next generation surround technology that intelligently up mixes stereo; 5.1 and 7.1 content for playback through your surround speaker system. Dolby surround is compatible with traditional speaker layouts, as well as Dolby Atmos enabled playback systems that employ in-ceiling speakers or products with Dolby speaker technology.

## Dolby Speaker Technology (Dolby Atmos Enabled Speakers)

A convenient alternative to speakers built into the ceiling, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers employ the ceiling above you as a reflective surface for reproducing audio in the height plane above the listener. These speakers feature a unique upward firing driver and special signal processing. These features can be built into a conventional speaker or standalone speaker module. The features minimally impact the overall speaker footprint while providing an immersive listening experience during Dolby Atmos and Dolby surround playback.

## Dolby TrueHD

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution.



## ■ DTS

### DTS

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. DTS delivers a powerful and dynamic surround sound experience, and is found in the world's finest movie theaters and screening rooms.

### DTS 96/24

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1-channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

### DTS Digital Surround

DTS™ Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1-channels of digital discrete surround sound.

### DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

### DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel audio format that inserts a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

### DTS Express

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1-channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

### DTS-HD

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc.

This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.



## DTS-HD High Resolution Audio

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

## DTS-HD Master Audio

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

## DTS Neo:X

This matrix decoding technology uses the DTS Neo:X decoder to playback 2-channel source or 5.1/6.1/7.1-channel surround sources as a maximum of 11.1-channel surround sound. There are 3 modes: "Music" suited for playing music, "Cinema" suited for playing movies, and "Game" which is optimized for playing games.

## Update (DTS:X)

### Dialog Control

Gives you control of the listening experience. You can lift the dialog out from the background sounds when clarity and intelligibility are desired. This requires that content has been authored to support Dialog Control.

### DTS:X

DTS:X produces a hemisphere of audio, where flyovers as well as ambient backgrounds become truly enveloping. DTS:X objects enable audio to move smoothly from one speaker to any other creating life-like realism.

### DTS Neural:X

Enables an immersive audio experience for older content. DTS Neural:X can upmix your stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 content to take full advantage of all speakers in your surround sound system.



## ■ Audio

### ALAC (Apple Lossless Audio Codec)

This is a codec for lossless audio compression method developed by Apple Inc. This codec can be played back on iTunes, iPod or iPhone. Data compressed to approximately 60 – 70 % can be decompressed to exactly the same original data.

### Bass Sync

Audio sources such as BD and DVD inherently have time delay between the bass components of the satellite channel and the LFE channel. This function adjusts such a delay for reproducing (replaying) richer bass sound during playback. This function is by default set to 0 msec. Since the delay varies according to the title, play back the audio source and adjust to the most effective value for playback. For some audio sources that are played back, this function may have little effect.

### FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality.

The FLAC license is as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.



THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### LFE

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass to the system subwoofer(s).

#### MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the "MPEG-1" video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.

#### MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include "MPEG-1 Video", "MPEG-2 Video", "MPEG-4 Visual", "MPEG-4 AVC". Audio standards include "MPEG-1 Audio", "MPEG-2 Audio", "MPEG-4 AAC".

#### WMA (Windows Media Audio)

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.



## **Sampling frequency**

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the “sampling frequency”. The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

## **Dialog normalization function**

This function operates automatically during playback of Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS or DTS-HD sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources.

## **Dynamic range**

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

## **Downmix**

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to a lower number of channels and plays back according to the system's configuration.

## **■ Video**

### **ISF**

ISF (Imaging Science Foundation) is an organization that certifies video technicians who are then qualified to carry out calibration and adjustment to match the installation conditions. It also sets quality standards for the optimization of device video performance.

### **Progressive (sequential scanning)**

This is a scanning system of the video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and jagged edges.



## ■ Network

### AES (Advanced Encryption Standard)

This is a next generation standard encryption method replacing the current DES and 3DES, and because of its high security it is expected to be applied widely to wireless LANs in the future. It uses the "Rijndael" algorithm developed by two Belgian cryptographers to divide the data into blocks of fixed lengths and encrypt each block. It supports data lengths of 128, 192 and 256 bits and key lengths of 128, 192 and 256 bits as well, offering extremely high encryption security.

### AirPlay

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

### DLNA

DLNA and DLNA CERTIFIED are trademarks and/or service marks of Digital Living Network Alliance. Some contents may not be compatible with other DLNA CERTIFIED® products.

### TKIP (Temporal Key Integrity Protocol)

This is a network key used for WPA. The encryption algorithm is RC4, the same as for WEP, but the security level is increased by changing the network key used for encryption for each packet.

### vTuner

This is a free online content server for Internet Radio.

For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.

vTuner website:

<http://www.radiomarantz.com>

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.

### WEP Key (network key)

This is key information used for encrypting data when conducting data transfer. On this unit, the same WEP key is used for data encryption and decryption, so the same WEP key must be set on both devices in order for communications to be established between them.



**Wi-Fi®**

Wi-Fi Certification assures tested and proven interoperability by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group certifying interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

**WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access)**

This is a security standard established by the Wi-Fi Alliance. In addition to the conventional SSID (network name) and WEP key (network key), it also uses a user identification function and encrypting protocol for stronger security.

**WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 2)**

This is a new version of the WPA established by the Wi-Fi Alliance, compatible with more secure AES encryption.

**WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK (Pre-shared Key)**

This is a simple authentication system for mutual authentication when a preset character string matches on the wireless LAN access point and client.

**WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)**

This is a standard drawn up by the Wi-Fi Alliance to ease the task of setting up wireless LAN connections and configuring security. There are two methods: push-button and PIN (Personal Identification Number) code.

**Network Names (SSID: Service Set Identifier)**

When forming wireless LAN networks, groups are formed to prevent interference, data theft, etc. These groups are based on "SSID (network names)". For enhanced security, a WEP key is set so that communication is unavailable unless both the "SSID" and the WEP key match. This is suitable for temporarily constructing a simplified network.

**Modem**

Device that connects to your broadband internet provider, and is very often supplied with the service. A type that is integrated with a router is also often available.



## ■ Media player

### iTunes

iTunes is the name of the multimedia player provided by Apple Inc. iTunes is the name of the multimedia player provided by Apple Inc. It enables management and playback of multimedia contents including music and movies. iTunes supports many main file formats including AAC, WAV, and MP3.

### Windows Media Player

This is a media player distributed free of charge by Microsoft Corporation. It can play playlists created with Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, as well as WMA, WAV, and other files.

## ■ Others

### App Store

App Store is a site that sells application software for such devices as the iPhone or iPod Touch, and is operated by Apple Inc.

### HDCP

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

### MAIN ZONE

The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

### ZONE2

This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE2 playback). The room for ZONE2 playback is called ZONE2.

### ZONE3

This unit can operate in a room other than the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE) (ZONE3 playback). The room for ZONE3 playback is called ZONE3.



## Pairing

Pairing (registration) is an operation that is required in order to connect a Bluetooth device to this unit using Bluetooth. When paired, the devices authenticate each other and can connect without mistaken connections occurring.

When using Bluetooth connection for the first time, you need to pair this unit and the Bluetooth device to be connected.

This unit can store pairing information for a maximum of 8 devices.



## Trademark information



"Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

AirPlay, the AirPlay logo, iPad, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.



Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT32, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®, Audyssey DSX® and Audyssey LFC™ are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.



The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Surround, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.





For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, DTS-HD, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS-HD Master Audio and DTS Neo:X | 11.1 are a trademark of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

#### Update (DTS:X)



For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS in combination with the Symbol, DTS:X, and the DTSX logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. ©DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.



The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Wi-Fi Certification provides assurance that the device has passed the interoperability test conducted by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group that certifies interoperability among wireless LAN devices.



Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

**Upgrade (Auro-3D)**

Manufactured under license from Auro Technologies.

Auro-3D® and the related symbols are registered trademarks of Auro Technologies. All materials contained in this work are protected by copyright law and may not be reproduced, distributed, transmitted, displayed, published or broadcast without the prior written permission of Auro Technologies NV or in case of third party materials, the owner of that content. You may not alter or remove any trademark, copyright or other notice from copies of the content.

Auro Technologies: mail [info@auro-technologies.com](mailto:info@auro-technologies.com),  
phone +32-(0)-14314343, fax +32-(0)-14321224, [www.auro-technologies.com](http://www.auro-technologies.com)



# Specifications

## ■ Audio section

- Analog

<b>Input sensitivity/Input impedance:</b>	Unbalanced RCA input:200 mV/47 kΩ/kohms Balanced XLR input:400 mV/94 kΩ/kohms
<b>Frequency response:</b>	10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, -3 dB (Direct mode)
<b>S/N:</b>	105 dB (IHF-A weighted, Direct mode)
<b>Distortion:</b>	0.005 % (20 Hz – 20 kHz) (Direct mode)
<b>Rated output:</b>	Unbalanced RCA pre-output : 1.2 V Balanced XLR pre-output: 2.4 V

- Digital

<b>D/A output:</b>	Rated output — 2 V (at 0 dB playback) Total harmonic distortion — 0.008 % (1 kHz, at 0 dB) S/N ratio — 102 dB Dynamic range — 100 dB
<b>Digital input:</b>	Format — Digital audio interface

- Phono equalizer

<b>Input sensitivity:</b>	2.5 mV
<b>RIAA deviation:</b>	±1 dB (20 Hz to 20 kHz)
<b>S/N:</b>	74 dB (IHF-A, with 5 mV input)
<b>Rated output:</b>	150 mV
<b>Distortion factor:</b>	0.03 % (1 kHz, 3 V)



## ■ Video section

- Standard video connectors

**Input/output level and impedance:** 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms

**Frequency response:** 5 Hz – 10 MHz — 0, -3 dB

- Color component video connector

**Input/output level and impedance:** Y signal — 1 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms

$P_B / C_B$  signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms

$P_R / C_R$  signal — 0.7 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms

**Frequency response:** 5 Hz – 60 MHz — 0, -3 dB

## ■ Tuner section

**[FM]****[AM]**

(Note: μV at 75 Ω/ohms, 0 dBf =  $1 \times 10^{-15}$  W)

**Reception frequency range:** 87.50 MHz – 107.90 MHz

530 kHz – 1710 kHz

**Effective sensitivity:** 1.5 μV (14.8 dBf)

20 μV

**S/N ratio (IHF-A):** Mono: 78 dB

85 dB

Stereo: 68 dB

HD: 85 dB

**Distortion (1 kHz):** MONO – 0.1 %

STEREO – 0.2 %

HD: 0.02 %

0.02 %



## ■ Wireless LAN section

**Network type (wireless LAN standard):** Wi-Fi® compliant \*1

**Security:**  
WEP 64 bit, WEP 128 bit  
WPA/WPA2-PSK (AES)  
WPA/WPA2-PSK (TKIP)

**Radio frequency:** 2.4 GHz

**No. of channels:** 1 – 11 ch

\*1 The Wi-Fi® CERTIFIED Logo and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED On-Product Logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.



## ■ Bluetooth section

<b>Communications system:</b>	Bluetooth Version 2.1 + EDR (Enhanced Data Rate)
<b>Transmission power:</b>	Maximum 2.5 mW (Class 2)
<b>Maximum communication range:</b>	Approx. 32.8 ft/10 m in line of sight*2
<b>Frequency band:</b>	2.4 GHz band
<b>Modulation scheme:</b>	FHSS (Frequency-Hopping Spread Spectrum)
<b>Supported profiles:</b>	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) 1.2 AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile) 1.4
<b>Corresponding codec:</b>	SBC, AAC
<b>Transmission range (A2DP):</b>	20 Hz - 20,000 Hz

\*2 The actual communication range varies depending on the influence of such factors as obstructions between devices, electromagnetic waves from microwave ovens, static electricity, cordless phones, reception sensitivity, antenna performance, operating system, application software etc.

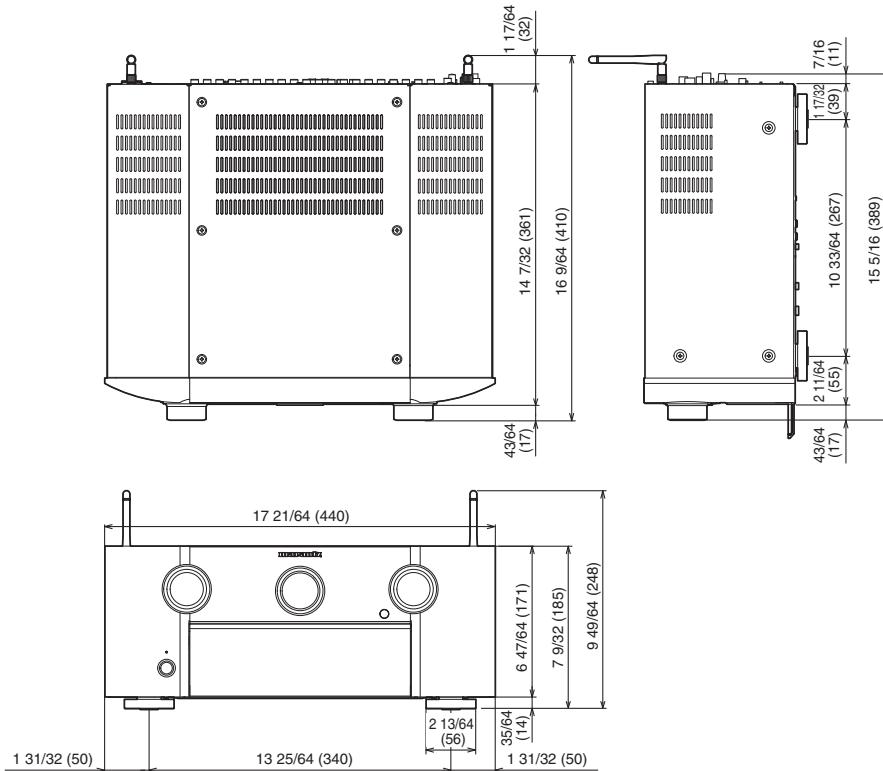
## ■ General

<b>Power supply:</b>	AC 120 V, 60 Hz
<b>Power consumption:</b>	90 W
<b>Power consumption in standby mode:</b>	0.2 W
<b>Power consumption in CEC standby mode:</b>	0.5 W
<b>Power consumption in network standby mode:</b>	4.5 W

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.



## ■ Dimensions (Unit : in. (mm))



■ Weight: 30 lbs (13.6 kg)

# Index

## Numerics

11.1-channel .....	50, 57
3D .....	309
4K .....	309
5.1-channel .....	43, 50, 53
7.1-channel .....	54
9.1-channel .....	55, 59

## A

Accessories .....	10
Add New Feature .....	272
Adjusting the volume .....	87
Adjusting volume of each channel .....	144
AirPlay .....	134
All Zone Stereo .....	148
Audio formats .....	311, 314, 316, 317
Audio settings .....	183, 189
Audyssey DSX® .....	330
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® .....	330
Audyssey Dynamic Volume® .....	331
Audyssey MultEQ® XT32 .....	331
Audyssey settings .....	198, 224
Audyssey® Setup .....	222
Auro-3D .....	9
Auto Standby .....	267

## B

Bi-amp connection .....	58
Cables .....	35
Connecting a Blu-ray Disc player .....	70
Connecting a cable TV .....	69
Connecting a DVD player .....	70
Connecting a game console .....	71
Connecting a satellite tuner .....	69
Connecting a set-top box .....	69
Connecting a TV .....	64, 65, 66
Connecting a video camera .....	71
Connecting an external control device .....	81
Connecting an iPod .....	74
Connecting an USB memory device .....	74
Connecting HD Radio receiver .....	77
Connecting a power cord .....	84
Connecting to a home network (LAN) .....	79
Connecting ZONE2/ZONE3 .....	178



## Contents

## Connections

## Playback

## Settings

## Tips

## Appendix



D	
Direct sound mode .....	159
Display .....	24
DLNA .....	339
Dolby Atmos .....	332
Dolby sound mode .....	153, 332
DTS sound mode .....	154, 334
DTS:X .....	8



E	
Error messages (Audyssey® Setup) .....	230
Explanation of terms/technology .....	309, 330



F	
Firmware Update .....	271
Front panel .....	19



G	
General settings .....	185, 264



H	
HD Radio playback .....	101
HDCP .....	311
HDMI Control .....	166, 209



I	
Input Assign .....	218
Input signal .....	326
Input source settings .....	184, 218
Inputting characters .....	187
Inserting the batteries .....	11
iPod Browse Mode .....	90
iTunes .....	341



J	
JPEG .....	93, 116



L	
Listening position .....	222
Listening to Spotify .....	137



M	
M-DAX .....	196
Menu map .....	183



N	
Network settings .....	257



O	
Original sound mode .....	158



P	
Pairing a Bluetooth device .....	97, 100
PCM multi-channel sound mode .....	157
Picture Mode .....	147
Playing back a Bluetooth device .....	98
Playing back a Blu-ray Disc player .....	87
Playing back a DVD player .....	87
Playing back an iPod .....	88
Playing back Flickr .....	123
Playing back from PC .....	116
Playing back Internet Radio .....	112
Playing back NAS .....	116
Playing back Pandora® .....	124
Playing back SiriusXM .....	131
Playing back USB memory device .....	93
Playing back ZONE2/ZONE3 .....	178
Preset codes .....	354
Pure Direct .....	151



 R

Random playback .....	92, 139
Rear panel .....	28
Remote control unit .....	31
Remove from Favorites .....	141
Repeat playback .....	92, 139
Resetting factory settings .....	308

 S

Save to Favorites .....	140
Selecting the input source .....	86
Setup Assistant .....	185
Sleep timer .....	167
Slideshow .....	142
Slideshow Interval .....	143
Smart select function .....	169
Sound mode .....	150, 318, 321
Speaker Settings .....	184, 222
Stereo sound mode .....	159

 T

Text Search .....	141
Tips .....	288
Tone Control .....	145
Troubleshooting .....	290
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting) .....	87
Turning the power on .....	86

 V

Video Conversion .....	212, 312
Video Select .....	146
Video settings .....	183, 204

 W

Web control .....	172
Wi-Fi settings .....	258



# List of preset codes

To return a preset code to the default settings, register the AVP code “0000” to the button whose preset code you want to cancel.

## AVP

**M** Marantz 0000

### CBL/SAT group

Registrable input source button :

#### A

Access Communications 4081  
 Adams Cable TV 4081  
 Alabama Broadband 4081  
 Alphastar 4027  
 Alta Utilities 4075  
 Americable International 4075  
 Amstrad 4076, 4046, 4047, 4050  
 Anne Arundel Broadband 4081  
 Apple TV 4068  
 Arledge Electronics 4074, 4081  
 Armstrong 4081  
 Astound Broadband 4075, 4081  
 ATMC 4081  
 Atsky 4048

#### B

Ballard Rural Telephone Cooperative 4074  
 Bee Line Cable 4081

#### Bell

4074  
 Bell Satellite TV 4074  
 Bend Broadband 4081  
 Blue Ridge Communications 4075  
 Boycom Cablevision 4081  
 Bright House 4075, 4081  
 Bristol Tennessee Essential Services 4075  
 BSkyB 4076, 4021, 4045, 4046  
 Buckeye Cable System 4081  
 Cable America 4075  
 Cable Axion Digitel 4081  
 Cable Cable 4075  
 Cablecom 4080  
 Cable & Communications 4081

#### C

Cable One 4081  
 Cable Suite 4081  
 Cable TV of Camrose 4081  
 Cablevision du Nord 4081  
 Cablevision of Marion County 4081  
 Cable Vision Services 4075  
 Cablevision 4075, 4081  
 Canal+ 4082  
 CanalSat 4082  
 CAS Cable 4081  
 CCAP 4075  
 Chaparral 4039  
 Chambers Cable 4081  
 Charter 4075, 4081  
 Chester Telephone 4081



# CBL/SAT group

Registerable input source button :



Cincinnati Bell	4075, 4081
Citizens Cable TV	4081
Cisco	4075, 4080
Coast Cable Communications	4081
Coast Communications	4081
Cogeco	4081
Columbus Telephone	4081
Comcast	4075, 4081
Community Cable & Broadband	4081
Comporium	4075
Consolidated Communications	4081
Coop CSCF	4081
Coosa Cable	4081
Country Cablevision	4081
Country Cablevision Ltd.	4081
Cox	4075, 4081
D	
CRRS-TV	4081
Delta Cable	4081
Direct Tv	4001, 4016, 4044
Dish Mexico	4074
Dish Network	4030
Dishpro	4074
Drake	4026
DRE	4051
E	
East Arkansas Video	4081
EastLink	4081
Easton Cable	4075
Echostar	4074, 4007, 4017, 4018, 4019, 4020, 4062, 4063, 4064
Eurosky	4056, 4047
Express Vu	4017
F	
Fayetteville Electric System	4075
FirstMile	4081
Florida Cable	4081
Foothills Rural Telephone Cooperative	4075
Foxtel	4051
Freesat	4056
Fujitsu	4025
GCI	4081
G	
GE	4002, 4008, 4009
General Instruments	4036, 4037
General Satellite	4051
Glenwood Telecommunications	4081
Grande Communications	4075, 4081
Gradiente	4044, 4057
H	
Harlan Community TV	4081
Harlan Municipal Utilities	4081
Hitachi	4001, 4015
I	
HomeTel	4081
Hood Canal Cablevision	4081
Horizon Cable TV	4081
HTS	4074
Hughes Network	4001, 4016
Humax	4078, 4079, 4049, 4050, 4051, 4052, 4053
HunTel Systems	4081
ImOn Communications	4075
Inside Connect Cable	4081
J	
Insight	4081
Inter Mountain Cable	4075
K	
Janeil	4025
JVC	4074, 4017
Kabel Deutschland	4078
L	
KBS Cable TV	4081
Knology	4075
LG Smart TV	4069
Liberty Cablevision	4081
M	
Lincoln Cable Television	4081
Loretel Systems	4081
Madison Communications	4081
Marantz	4000
Markdale Cable TV	4081
MCV Broadband	4075
Mediacom	4081
Mediapolis Telephone	4081
Mediastream	4081



## CBL/SAT group

Registrable input source button :



MetroCast	4081
Cablevision	
<b>MetroNet</b>	<b>4075</b>
Midcontinent Communications	4081
Mid-Rivers Communications	4081
Minet	4001
Mitsubishi	3007
Mosaic Telecom	4081
Morristown Utility Systems	4075
Motorola	4081
MTC Technologies	4081
Muscatine Power & Water	4081
<b>N</b>	<b>Netgear Neo TV</b>
Nextgen Communications	4075, 4081
Nokia	4058, 4059, 4060, 4061
Northland Communications	4081
Northwest Iowa Telephone	4075
Northwest Telephone Cooperative	4081
NorthwesTel	4081
Novus	4081
NuLink	4075

NTL	4077
<b>O</b>	<b>Optima</b>
Optus	4077
Orbitel Communications	4081
<b>P</b>	<b>Pace</b>
Panasonic	4004, 4010
Panhandle Telephone	4081
Philips	4080, 4031, 4035, 4044, 4057
Pine Bluff Cable	4081
Pioneer	4075
Proscan	4002, 4008, 4009, 4011
PTCI	4081
<b>R</b>	<b>Radio Shack</b>
Rancho Murieta Association	4081
RCA	4002, 4008, 4009, 4029
RCN	4081
Realistic	4040
Reservation Telephone	4081
Resort Cable	4081
Rogers	4075, 4081
Roku XDS	4073
Rural Cable	4036
Rural Telephone Company	4081

<b>S</b>	<b>Samsung</b>	4075, 4076, 4077, 4022, 4027, 4042, 4043, 4054, 4055, 4050
Schneider	4041, 4043	
Scientific Atlanta	4075	
Service Electric	4081	
Shaw	4081	
Shentel	4081	
Sjoberg's Cable TV	4081	
<b>SKY</b>	<b>4076, 4079, 4044, 4045, 4057</b>	
Sky Deutschland	4079	
Skyplus	4048	
Skysat	4041, 4047, 4056	
Source Cable	4081	
Sony	4003, 4012, 4014, 4065, 4066, 4067, 4014, 4070	
Sun Country Cable	4081	
Star Choice	4032	
Star Trak	4024	
STS	4038	
Suddenlink	4075, 4081	
SuperDish	4028	
<b>T</b>	<b>TDS Telecom</b>	4074
Teac	4049	
Teledistribution	4081	
Amos		
Telus	4074	
Texas Mid-Gulf Cablevision	4081	



## CBL/SAT group

Registrable input source button :



Thomson	4076, 4080, 4046, 4056		Wadsworth Cable TV	4081
Time Warner	4075, 4081		Waitsfield Cable	4081
Toshiba	4001, 4034		Wave Broadband	4081
<b>Total Cable Service</b>	<b>4081</b>		Westman Communications	4081
Triangle Communication System	4074		Western Digital WD TV	4071
Tricolor TV	4051		Western Iowa Telephone	4075
Tri-County Cable TV	4081		White County Video	4081
Troy Cablevision	4081		WideOpenWest	4081
TV Cable Company of Andalusia	4081		Willamette Broadband	4081
<b>U</b> Universum	<b>4075</b>		Windom Communications	4075
Uniden	4005, 4006, 4013		WOW!	4075, 4081
United Communications Association	4081		Xfinity	4075, 4081
Utilities Board City of Foley	4081		Z Zenith	4033, 4025, 4023
UPC	4077, 4080			
UPC Cablecom	4080			
<b>V</b> Valparaiso Communications	<b>4081</b>			
Videotron	4075			
Video Pall	4025			
Vision Communications	4081			
Virgin Media	4077			
Volcano Vision	4081			
VTR	4081			



# Audio group

Registrable input source button : **CD** **GAME** **AUX1** **AUX2**

<b>A</b>	Advantage	3063
	AH!	3106
	Aiwa	3104, 3106, 3001, 3002, 3003
	Akai	3004, 3005, 3006
	Arcam	3106, 3107
	Atoll Electronique	3106
	Audio	3007
	Audio LABS	3008
	Audio Research	3106
	Audiolab	3106
	Audiomeca	3106
	Audioton	3106
	AVI	3106
<b>C</b>	Cairn	3106
	California	3008
	Cambridge	3106
	Carver	3106, 3009, 3010, 3011
	Casio	3012, 3020
	Copland	3109
	Curtis	3020, 3012
	Cyrus	3106
<b>D</b>	Denon	3013, 3108
	DKK	3097
	Dual	3108
	Dynaco	3106
<b>E</b>	Emerson	3014
<b>F</b>	Fisher	3011, 3015, 3016, 3017, 3018

<b>G</b>	Garrard	3109
	GE	3109
	Genexxa	3063, 3014, 3021, 3020
	Goldmund	3106
	Grundig	3106
<b>H</b>	Harman/Kardon	3106
	Harmon	3022, 3023, 3051
	Hitachi	3063, 3020
<b>I</b>	Inkel	3024
	Integra	3110
<b>J</b>	JC Penney	3012, 3020, 3025
	JVC	3026, 3027
<b>K</b>	Kardon	3022, 3051, 3023
	Kenwood	3106, 3028, 3029, 3030, 3031, 3032, 3033
	Krell	3106, 3010
<b>L</b>	Linn	3106
	Loewe	3106
	Luxman	3109, 3035, 3036, 3037, 3038
	LX I	3012, 3020, 3014
<b>M</b>	Magnavox	3106, 3010, 3039, 3040
	Marantz	3000, 3106, 3010, 3041, 3042, 3043
	Mathes	3012, 3020
	Matsui	3106
	MCS	3012, 3020
	Memorex	3063
	Meridian	3106

<b>N</b>	MGA	3023
	Micromega	3106
	Mission	3106, 3010
	Mitsubishi	3023, 3044
	Musical Fidelity	3109
	Myryad	3106
<b>O</b>	NAD	3097, 3034, 3045
	Naim	3106
	Nakamichi	3046, 3047, 3048
	NEC MCS	3025
	Nikko	3007, 3016
	NSM	3106
<b>P</b>	Onkyo	3110, 3049, 3050, 3051, 3052, 3055, 3102, 3103
	Optimus	3063, 3097, 3011, 3014, 3020, 3028, 3053, 3054, 3056, 3057, 3058
	Orion	3109
<b>Q</b>	Panasonic	3008, 3060, 3061
	Philips	3106, 3009, 3010, 3040
	Pioneer	3110, 3020, 3021, 3062, 3063, 3064
	Primare	3106
	Proton	3106
<b>R</b>	QED	3106
	Quad	3106
	Quasar	3008
	Radiola	3106
	RCA	3063, 3011, 3014, 3065, 3066, 3067, 3068, 3069



# Audio group

Registrable input source button : CD GAME AUX1 AUX2

Realistic	3011 3014, 3020, 3042, 3054, 3057	Thorens	3106
Restek	3106	Thule Audio	3106
Revox	3106	Toshiba	3045
Rotel	3106, 3010	U Universum	3106
S RS Original	3070	V Victor	3026
SAE	3106, 3010, 3083	W Wadia	3106
Samsung	3071	Wards	3106,3063,3097
Sansui	3106, 3014, 3068, 3072, 3073	Y Yamaha	3105,3063,3007,3089,3090,3091, 3092
Sanyo	3011, 3018,3074, 3075,3076	Z Zenith	3016,3093,3094,3095,3096
Scott	3014		
Sears	3012, 3014, 3020, 3028,3042		
Sharp	3028, 3042, 3077		
Sherwood	3042, 3056, 3070, 3078,3024		
Shure	3025		
Siemens	3106		
Simaudio	3106		
Sonic Frontiers	3106		
Sony	3039, 3079, 3080,3081,3082, 3097, 3098, 3099, 3100, 3101		
Sylvania	3010		
Symphonic	3083		
T TAG McLaren	3106		
Tandy	3063		
Teac	3109, 3016, 3042, 3057, 3083, 3084, 3085, 3086		
Technica	3007, 3008, 3061, 3087, 3088		
Theta Digital	3040		



# TV group

Registrable input source button : 

<b>A</b>	Acer	1141
	Admiral	1009, 1089, 1002
	Aiko	1059
	Aiwa	1117, 1118
	Akai	1161, 1164, 1172, 1001
	Amtron	1023
	Anam	1113
	Anam National	1023, 1069, 1092
	AOC	1003, 1049, 1024, 1127
<b>B</b>	Aristona	1172
	Audiovox	1023
	Baird	1161
	Barco	1172
	Basic Line	1172
	Bell & Howell	1009, 1025
	Benq	1104, 1142
	Berthen	1172
	Blue Sky	1172
	BPL	1161
	Broksonic	1097, 1098, 1113, 1003
<b>C</b>	Bush	1161, 1172
	Celebrity	1001
	Citizen	1003, 1023, 1059, 1063, 1026, 1013
	Colortyme	1003, 1043
	Contec/Cony	1045, 1047, 1023, 1113
	Craig	1023, 1113, 1020, 1022
	Crown	1161, 1023, 1067

<b>D</b>	Curtis Mathes	1003, 1110, 1025, 1062, 1026, 1103, 1013
	Daewoo	1003, 1059, 1024, 1084, 1101, 1013, 1035, 1036, 1172
	Dansai	1161
	Daytron	1003, 1013, 1016
	De Graaf	1161
	Dimensia	1110, 1103
	Direct TV	1152
	Dumont	1010, 1003, 1153
	D-Vision	1172
<b>E</b>	Elbe	1172
	Electroband	1001
	Electrohome	1003, 1133, 1001, 1069
		1003, 1020, 1044, 1038, 1045, 1048,
	Emerson	1055, 1023, 1025, 1061, 1022, 1094, 1096, 1099, 1013, 1113, 1101, 1015, 1021
	Envision	1003
	ESA	1164
<b>F</b>	Finlandia	1161
	Finlux	1172
	Fisher	1161, 1051, 1025, 1091, 1160
	Firstline	1161, 1172
	Freesat	1165
	Fujitsu	1038, 1155, 1124, 1125
	Funai	1038, 1023, 1113

<b>G</b>	Gateway	1150
	GE	1110, 1003, 1085, 1046, 1054, 1133, 1018, 1069, 1022, 1103, 1113, 1136, 1153
	Goldstar	1045, 1024, 1112, 1080, 1100, 1013, 1003, 1030, 1154
	Goodmans	1172
	Granada	1161
	Grandin	1172
	Grundig	1172
<b>H</b>	Hallmark	1003
	Hanseatic	1172
	Hisense	1172, 1161, 1116
		1041, 1003, 1045, 1047, 1032, 1065,
	Hitachi	1068, 1088, 1082, 1037, 1094, 1031, 1159, 1145, 1139, 1012, 1140
	Hypson	1172
<b>I</b>	Infinity	1067
	Internal	1172
	ITT	1161
	ITT Nokia	1161
<b>J</b>	Janeil	1134
	JBL	1067
		1003, 1046, 1047, 1054, 1133, 1110, 1019, 1112, 1024, 1063, 1018, 1026,
	JC Penney	1083, 1085, 1100, 1103, 1013, 1154
	Jensen	1003
	JMB	1172



# TV group

Registrable input source button : 

Jubilee	1172
JVC	1045, 1047, 1050, 1060, 1065, 1028, 1029
<b>K</b> Kathrein	1172
Kawasho	1003, 1001
Kenwood	1003
Kloss Novabeam	1056, 1023, 1057, 1134
Kneissel	1172
KTV	1023, 1073, 1099, 1013, 1113, 1033, 1034
<b>L</b> LG	1162, 1171, 1172, 1024, 1030
Luxor	1161
<b>M</b> M.Wards	1002, 1009, 1038
Magnavox	1175, 1003, 1052, 1053, 1056, 1057, 1063, 1081, 1067, 1106
Marantz	1000, 1172, 1003, 1122, 1067, 1031
Matsui	1161, 1172
Mitsubishi	1172, 1003, 1051, 1133, 1122, 1024, 1115
Motorola	1069, 1014
Myryad	1172
<b>N</b> NEC	1029, 1003, 1043, 1024, 1069, 1012
Neckermann	1172
NET-TV	1137, 1150
Neufunk	1172
Nokia	1161
<b>O</b> Oceanic	1161
Onida	1029

Orion	1172, 1020, 1096
Osaki	1172
Otto Versand	1172
<b>P</b> Pacific	1172
Panasonic	1165, 1067, 1069, 1111, 1017, 1095
	1172, 1175, 1003, 1045, 1052, 1054,
Philips	1056, 1057, 1058, 1063, 1069, 1067, 1011
Philips Magnavox	1106, 1067
Pioneer	1003, 1018, 1070, 1071, 1037, 1094, 1145, 1147, 1149
Plasmsync	1135
Portland	1003, 1059, 1024, 1013
Price Club	1026
Prism	1018
Proscan	1110, 1085, 1103, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008
Pro Vision	1172
Proton	1003, 1045
Pye	1172
<b>Q</b> Quasar	1069, 1073, 1111, 1010, 1153
<b>R</b> Radiola	1172
Radio Shack	1025, 1103, 1113, 1024
Radio Shack/Realistic	1003, 1045, 1023, 1110, 1025, 1015, 1100, 1013
	1110, 1003, 1049, 1024, 1069, 1075, 1079, 1085, 1087, 1088, 1093, 1094, 1101, 1103, 1113, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008, 1153, 1014
RCA	

Realistic	1025, 1103
Runco	1010, 1153
<b>S</b> Salora	1161
Sampo	1150
	1163, 1164, 1172, 1003, 1045, 1024, 1062, 1026, 1078, 1083, 1090, 1100, 1013, 1105, 1040, 1146, 1148, 1120, 1121, 1114, 1157
Sansui	1119
Sanyo	1161, 1166, 1003, 1051, 1025, 1072, 1077, 1091, 1156, 1157, 1158
<b>SBR</b>	1172
Schneider	1172
Sharp	1177, 1029, 1173, 1003, 1045, 1055, 1015, 1064, 1066, 1076, 1089, 1013, 1014, 1123
Siera	1172
Signature	1009
Sonitron	1161
Sonorol	1161
Sony	1174, 1001, 1102, 1108
Soundesign	1003, 1038, 1023, 1063, 1113
Starlite	1023
Supersonic	1161
Supre-Macy	1134
Svasa	1161
Sylvania	1003, 1042, 1052, 1053, 1063, 1056, 1057, 1067, 1089, 1151, 1039, 1089



# TV group

Registrable input source button : 

<b>T</b>	Symphonic	1044, 1023, 1039	VIZIO	1169, 1170
	Tandy	1014		1003, 1009, 1044, 1038, 1046, 1052,
	Tatung	1069		1054, 1056, 1110, 1057, 1024, 1015,
	Technics	1172, 1018		1067, 1086, 1103
	TechniSat	1172	White Westinghouse	1101, 1001
	Technosonic	1172	Wharfedale	1172
	Tecnimagen	1172	Wilson	1172
	Techwood	1003, 1018	Windy Sam	1172
	Tedelex	1161	<b>Y</b> Yamaha	1003, 1024
		1003, 1009, 1038, 1045, 1047, 1063,		1171, 1010, 1003, 1009, 1144, 1153,
	Teknika	1023, 1059, 1024, 1026, 1111, 1013,		1032
		1113		
	Telecaption	1074		
	Telestar	1172		
	Tesla	1172		
	Tevion	1172		
		1176, 1167, 1168, 1042, 1025, 1074,		
	Toshiba	1026, 1098, 1003, 1107, 1019, 1027,		
		1111, 1135, 1136		
	Totlevision	1013		
	TRANS-continents	1172		
	Triad	1172		
	Triumph	1172		
	TVTEXT	1172		
<b>U</b>	United	1172		
	Universal	1046, 1054		
<b>V</b>	Video Concepts	1113		
		1130, 1128, 1006, 1131, 1129, 1109,		
	Viewsonic	1143, 1150, 1022, 1138, 1145		



## DVD group

Registrable input source button : DVD Blu-ray GAME AUX1 AUX2

<b>3</b>	3D LAB	2069
	Aiwa	2036, 2037
<b>A</b>	Alba	2069
	Aristona	2069
	Apex	2017, 2034, 2018, 2019, 2021, 2012
<b>B</b>	Bluray	2064
	Bose	2038, 2039, 2063
	Brandt	2004
<b>C</b>	California Audio Labs	2066
	CyberHome	2068
<b>D</b>	Dantax	2069
	Denon	2047, 2066, 2048
<b>D</b>	Elta	2068
<b>F</b>	Finlux	2010
	Funai	2049
<b>G</b>	GE	2020, 2029, 2033, 2009
	Go Video	2010
	GoldStar	2010
	GPX	2010
	Grundig	2069
<b>H</b>	Harman Kardon	2061
	Hanseatic	2010
	Hitachi	2031, 2012, 2008, 2031
	Integra	2062
	Insignia	2010
<b>J</b>	JVC	2069, 2004, 2006, 2010, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043

<b>K</b>	Kenwood	2066, 2054, 2053
	Koss	2058
<b>L</b>	LG	2010
	Loewe	2069, 2010
	Lumatron	2010
	Lunatron	2010
	Luxman	2008
<b>M</b>	Magnavox	2069, 2004, 2023, 2025, 2011, 2007
	Marantz	2000, 2069, 2025, 2065
	Medion	2044, 2010
	Micromedia	2069, 2004
	Micromega	2069
	Mitsubishi	2011, 2015
	mp man	2068
<b>N</b>	NAD	2010
	NEC	2010
<b>O</b>	Omni	2068
	Onkyo	2062, 2004
	Oritron	2030, 2009
<b>P</b>	Panasonic	2066, 2004, 2003, 2015, 2016, 2055
	Philips	2069, 2004, 2007, 2011, 2058
	Pioneer	2002, 2014, 2056
	Polk Audio	2069
	Pye	2069
	Proscan	2020, 2032, 2009
<b>R</b>	Radionette	2010

<b>RCA</b>	2020, 2005, 2009, 2035, 2057
<b>REC</b>	2066
<b>Rotel</b>	2040
<b>S</b>	Salora
	2010
	Sampo
	2041
	Samsung
	2066, 2008, 2022, 2024, 2027, 2012
	Sanyo
	2050, 2052
	Schneider
	2069
	Sharp
	2044, 2045
	Sherwood
	2051, 2010
	Skantic
	2069
	Silva Schneider
	2010
	Sony
	2067, 2001, 2013, 2059
	Sylvania
	2044
<b>T</b>	Targa
	2010
	TCM
	2010
	Technics
	2066
	Teac
	2010
	Tchibo
	2010
	Toshiba
	2004, 2026, 2028, 2008
	Typhoon
	2068
<b>U</b>	Universum
	2010
<b>W</b>	Windy Sam
	2008
<b>Y</b>	Yamaha
	2066, 2069, 2046, 2060
<b>Z</b>	Zenith
	2010



## Blu-ray group

Registrable input source button : **Blu-ray** **DVD** **GAME** **AUX1** **AUX2**

<b>D</b>	Denon	5034, 5042, 5035, 5036
<b>H</b>	Hitachi	5031, 5032, 5033
<b>I</b>	Integra	5013
<b>J</b>	JVC	5037, 5041, 5014, 5015, 5017, 5018, 5019, 5020
<b>L</b>	LG	5041, 5010, 5011
<b>M</b>	Marantz	5000, 5026, 5027
	Microsoft	5044
	Mitsubishi	5024, 5025
<b>N</b>	NEC	5041
<b>O</b>	Onkyo	5013
<b>P</b>	Panasonic	5041, 5001, 5002, 5003
	Philips	5038, 5040, 5004
	Pioneer	5005
<b>R</b>	RCA	5012
<b>S</b>	Samsung	5039, 5006, 5005
	Sharp	5028, 5029, 5030
	Sony	5007, 5008, 5009, 5016
<b>T</b>	Toshiba	5043, 5012
<b>X</b>	Xbox	5044
<b>Y</b>	Yamaha	5021, 5022, 5023



# License

This section describes software license used for this unit.

To maintain the correct content, the original (English) is used.

## ■ Boost

<http://www.boost.org/>

Boost Software License – Version 1.0 – August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following:

The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## ■ Expat

<http://www.jclark.com/xml/expat.html>

Expat License. Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## ■ FastDelegate

<http://www.codeproject.com/KB/cpp/FastDelegate.aspx>

THE WORK (AS DEFINED BELOW) IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS CODE PROJECT OPEN LICENSE ("LICENSE"). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HEREIN, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. THE AUTHOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HEREIN IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ACCEPT AND BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, YOU CANNOT MAKE ANY USE OF THE WORK.



Definitions. "Articles" means, collectively, all articles written by Author which describes how the Source Code and Executable Files for the Work may be used by a user.

"Author" means the individual or entity that offers the Work under the terms of this License.

"Derivative Work" means a work based upon the Work or upon the Work and other pre-existing works.

"Executable Files" refer to the executables, binary files, configuration and any required data files included in the Work.

"Publisher" means the provider of the website, magazine, CD-ROM, DVD or other medium from or by which the Work is obtained by You.

"Source Code" refers to the collection of source code and configuration files used to create the Executable Files.

"Standard Version" refers to such a Work if it has not been modified, or has been modified in accordance with the consent of the Author, such consent being in the full discretion of the Author.

"Work" refers to the collection of files distributed by the Publisher, including the Source Code, Executable Files, binaries, data files, documentation, whitepapers and the Articles.

"You" is you, an individual or entity wishing to use the Work and exercise your rights under this License.

Fair Use/Fair Use Rights. Nothing in this License is intended to reduce, limit, or restrict any rights arising from fair use, fair dealing, first sale or other limitations on the exclusive rights of the copyright owner under copyright law or other applicable laws.

License Grant. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, the Author hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright) license to exercise the rights in the Work as stated below: You may use the standard version of the Source Code or Executable Files in Your own applications.

You may apply bug fixes, portability fixes and other modifications obtained from the Public Domain or from the Author. A Work modified in such a way shall still be considered the standard version and will be subject to this License.

You may otherwise modify Your copy of this Work (excluding the Articles) in any way to create a Derivative Work, provided that You insert a prominent notice in each changed file stating how, when and where You changed that file.

You may distribute the standard version of the Executable Files and Source Code or Derivative Work in aggregate with other (possibly commercial) programs as part of a larger (possibly commercial) software distribution.

The Articles discussing the Work published in any form by the author may not be distributed or republished without the Author's consent. The author retains copyright to any such Articles. You may use the Executable Files and Source Code pursuant to this License but you may not repost or republish or otherwise distribute or make available the Articles, without the prior written consent of the Author.

Any subroutines or modules supplied by You and linked into the Source Code or Executable Files this Work shall not be considered part of this Work and will not be subject to the terms of this License.

Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Author hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, import, and otherwise transfer the Work.

Restrictions. The license granted in Section 3 above is expressly made subject to and limited by the following restrictions: You agree not to remove any of the original copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices and associated disclaimers that may appear in the Source Code or Executable Files.

You agree not to advertise or in any way imply that this Work is a product of Your own.

The name of the Author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from the Work without the prior written consent of the Author.

You agree not to sell, lease, or rent any part of the Work. This does not restrict you from including the Work or any part of the Work inside a larger software distribution that itself is being sold. The Work by itself, though, cannot be sold, leased or rented.



You may distribute the Executable Files and Source Code only under the terms of this License, and You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License with every copy of the Executable Files or Source Code You distribute and ensure that anyone receiving such Executable Files and Source Code agrees that the terms of this License apply to such Executable Files and/or Source Code. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Work that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder. You may not sublicense the Work. You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute the Executable Files or Source Code with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License.

You agree not to use the Work for illegal, immoral or improper purposes, or on pages containing illegal, immoral or improper material. The Work is subject to applicable export laws. You agree to comply with all such laws and regulations that may apply to the Work after Your receipt of the Work.

**Representations, Warranties and Disclaimer.** THIS WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS", "WHERE IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OR GUARANTEES. YOU, THE USER, ASSUME ALL RISK IN ITS USE, INCLUDING COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, PATENT INFRINGEMENT, SUITABILITY, ETC. AUTHOR EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY QUALITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, OR THAT THE WORK (OR ANY PORTION THEREOF) IS CORRECT, USEFUL, BUG-FREE OR FREE OF VIRUSES. YOU MUST PASS THIS DISCLAIMER ON WHENEVER YOU DISTRIBUTE THE WORK OR DERIVATIVE WORKS.

**Indemnity.** You agree to defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Author and the Publisher from and against any claims, suits, losses, damages, liabilities, costs, and expenses (including reasonable legal or attorneys' fees) resulting from or relating to any use of the Work by You.

**Limitation on Liability.** EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER BE LIABLE TO YOU ON ANY LEGAL THEORY FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS LICENSE OR THE USE OF THE WORK OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

**Termination.**

This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically upon any breach by You of any term of this License. Individuals or entities who have received Derivative Works from You under this License, however, will not have their licenses terminated provided such individuals or entities remain in full compliance with those licenses. Sections 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11 will survive any termination of this License.

If You bring a copyright, trademark, patent or any other infringement claim against any contributor over infringements You claim are made by the Work, your License from such contributor to the Work ends automatically.

Subject to the above terms and conditions, this License is perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright in the Work). Notwithstanding the above, the Author reserves the right to release the Work under different license terms or to stop distributing the Work at any time; provided, however that any such election will not serve to withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.

**Publisher.** The parties hereby confirm that the Publisher shall not, under any circumstances, be responsible for and shall not have any liability in respect of the subject matter of this License. The Publisher makes no warranty whatsoever in connection with the Work and shall not be liable to You or any party on any legal theory for any damages whatsoever, including without limitation any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising in connection to this license. The Publisher reserves the right to cease making the Work available to You at any time without notice

#### Miscellaneous

This License shall be governed by the laws of the location of the head office of the Author or if the Author is an individual, the laws of location of the principal place of residence of the Author.

If any provision of this License is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this License, and without further action by the parties to this License, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.



No term or provision of this License shall be deemed waived and no breach consented to unless such waiver or consent shall be in writing and signed by the party to be charged with such waiver or consent.

This License constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Work licensed herein. There are no understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Work not specified herein. The Author shall not be bound by any additional provisions that may appear in any communication from You. This License may not be modified without the mutual written agreement of the Author and You

## ■ libogg

<http://www.xiph.org/ogg/>

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## ■ libvorbis

<http://www.xiph.org/vorbis/>

Copyright (c) 2002-2004 Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## ■ Tremolo

<http://wss.co.uk/pinknoise/tremolo>

Copyright (C) 2002 – 2009 Xiph.org Foundation Changes Copyright (C) 2009 – 2010 Robin Watts for Pinknoise Productions Ltd

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:



- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## ■ Tremor

<http://wiki.xiph.org/index.php/Tremor>

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## ■ Mersenne Twister

<http://www.math.sci.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/~m-mat/MT/MT2002/CODES/mt19937ar.c>

Copyright (C) 1997 – 2002, Makoto Matsumoto and Takuji Nishimura,  
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

The names of its contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.



THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## **■ zlib**

<http://www.zlib.net/>

zlib.h -- interface of the "zlib" general purpose compression library version 1.2.3, July 18th, 2005

Copyright (C) 1995 – 2004 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

This software is provided "as-is", without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.

Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly [jloup@gzip.org](mailto:jloup@gzip.org), Mark Adler [madler@alumni.caltech.edu](mailto:madler@alumni.caltech.edu)

## **■ cURL**

<http://curl.haxx.se>

### COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 – 2011, Daniel Stenberg, <[daniel@haxx.se](mailto:daniel@haxx.se)>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

## **■ c-ares**

<http://c-ares.haxx.se>

Copyright 1998 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of M.I.T. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. M.I.T. makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.



## ■ License information for the software used in the unit

About GPL (GNU-General Public License), LGPL (GNU Lesser General Public License) License

This product uses GPL/LGPL software and software made by other companies.

After you purchase this product, you may procure, modify or distribute the source code of the GPL/LGPL software that is used in the product. Marantz provides the source code based on the GPL and LPGL licenses at the actual cost upon your request to our customer service center.

However, note that we make no guarantees concerning the source code.

Please also understand that we do not offer support for the contents of the source code.





**www.marantz.com**

You can find your nearest authorized distributor or dealer on our website.

**marantz®** is a registered trademark.

3520 10376 10AMA

Copyright © 2015 D&M Holdings Inc. All Rights Reserved.